#### **Foreword**

Thank you for purchasing the battery electric vehicle manufactured by BAIC BJEV (hereinafter referred to as "BJEV"). And also thank you for making contributions to the environmental protection in China because of the purchasing.

This user manual is applicable to BAIC BJEV EU5 model. Please read this manual carefully before first use to get familiar with the structure, functions, how to use and relevant regulations from BJEV as soon as possible. The contents included in the manual will help you understand how to drive and maintain your vehicle correctly, allowing you to fully enjoy the fun of driving.

This manual aims to provide users with instructions and guidance on the use and maintenance of vehicle. Please check the purchase contract for the specific configuration of your vehicle. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV..

In view of BAIC New Energy's continuous retrofit and improvement of vehicles, the equipment and performance of subsequent models will be changed without prior notice. Do not compare your vehicle's equipment and performance with the contents of the in-vehicle manuals of other versions, and even claim for compensation of the equipment based on their differences. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV If you have any questions about the purchased vehicles and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

Do not modify the vehicle in any way Otherwise, the safety, durability and performance of the vehicle may be adversely affected and the limited warranty conditions of the vehicle may be violated.

Drivers should strictly observe all laws and regulations relating to motor vehicles. The relevant laws and regulations have been fully considered and complied with in the preparation of this manual, but some items may not conform to the latest revised laws and regulations at the time of your purchase.

When you resell the vehicle, please keep the manual in the vehicle where the manual is stored and remind the purchaser so that he/ she can obtain the relevant information in the manual.

#### **Foreword**

Warnings, attentions, hints and some special symbols frequently appear in this manual. Special attention should be paid to these. Ignoring these warnings may cause personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

- "Warning" means that if you don't follow the instructions during operation, it will probably lead to serious personal injury or even death;
- "Caution" means that dangerous or unsafe operation will cause personal injury or vehicle damage;
- "HINT" gives useful information.

Equipment marked with "\*" is only applicable to some models or is only used as an optional part or function of certain models. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

However, because of the BJEV policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to change a part of the vehicle, equipment or technical specifications at any time without notice. The contents related to the scope of delivery, appearance, performance, size, weight, specifications and data related to vehicle functions shall be subject to the contents as of the date of printing. Some of the equipment described in this manual may not be available for your vehicle (you may contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for details). None of the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual shall be deemed to be a legal commitment.

It is not allowed to reprint, copy or translate any part of this manual, copy and store this publication in the public retrieval system, or spread it in electronic, mechanical records or any other form without the written consent from BJEV.

BJEV solemnly declares that it is fully responsible for the revision, interpretation and explanation of this user manual, and reserves all rights and interests and the right to make changes as stipulated in the copyright law.

**BAIC BJEV** 

October, 2021

#### **Instruction to Users**

When purchasing a car, users should accept the guidance of professionals from the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to learn the knowledge related to the driving, charging, daily maintenance and other aspects of pure electric vehicles. If users have any problems while driving pure electric vehicles, please contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV in time, and the service telephone number is 400-810-8100.

- 1. The power battery and drive motor are high-voltage devices. All high-voltage cables and connectors have been designed, manufactured and assembled in strict accordance with relevant national and industrial standards. In addition to the necessary operations allowed in this manual, please do not pull the high-voltage cables (the surface of the high-voltage cables is in orange) and connectors to prevent electric shock.
- 2. Please follow all warning labels attached to vehicle parts.
- 3. Any change to vehicle parts may affect the performance and high-voltage safety of the vehicle and lead to safety hazards such as electric shock. Therefore, any work involving the removal of electrical system or the replacement of relay shall be carried out by the special dealer of BJEV. It is strictly prohibited to remove or replace it by yourself!
- 4. Suggestions on Vehicle Use in Extreme Weather

In summer, it is hot in weather and high in the air temperature. And in order to ensure the safety of vehicles and drivers, it is recommended not to expose your vehicle in the hot sun for a long time. You'd better park it in an open space well ventilated. In rainy days, it is strictly prohibited to start the vehicle in case that the water has flooded the bottom of the battery pack. Please contact your special dealer of BJEV in time. In winter, the power battery efficiency is low. And thus it is recommended to charge it as you use it; the vehicle shall be charged immediately after use to improve the charging efficiency.

5. Precautions for Use of Front Engine Room:

Before opening the front engine room, "start / stop button" should be in "OFF" mode; Devices marked with high-voltage danger warning signs in the front engine room are strictly prohibited from being touched directly by hands; It is strictly prohibited to spray water and flush in the front engine room; Do not open the front engine compartment cover in the rain to prevent electric leakage. Users are not allowed to open high-voltage components without permission. If the indicator light of the high-voltage part of the instrument cluster lights up (see "Warning, Indicator Light (Type I) \*" on page 047 for details), indicating that the high-voltage system of the vehicle is faulty, contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

If the door cannot be opened, the power of 12V battery may be insufficient, resulting in that the door lock cannot be unlocked. In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV in time.

#### **User Notices**

- 7. Possible reasons why the vehicle cannot start:
- Check the power battery meter to check the surplus electric quantity. When the power battery capacity is low, please charge the battery of the vehicle;
- Insufficient 12V battery power After you carry out the above operation, the vehicle still cannot be started, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV in time.
- 8. Before operating in the front engine room, the "Start/Stop Button" must be turned off.
- 9. Precautions in case of accident:
- Switch the gear of complete vehicle to "N" gear or "P" gear and turn off the "Start/Stop button".
- If the cables on the car are exposed or damaged, do not touch any cable to prevent electric shock.
- In case of fire, leave the vehicle immediately and extinguish it with dry powder fire extinguisher or carbon dioxide fire extinguisher.
- If the vehicle has a collision accident, it is not allowed to start the vehicle again.
- When the vehicle is partially or completely submerged in water, turn off the "start/stop button" and quickly escape from the vehicle. In
  case of salvage, the salvage operation should be carried out when there are no bubbles or sizzling sounds on the water surface. If bubbles or sizzle are found, it is necessary to wait until there is no bubble or sizzle. And salvage operation must be carried out by professional personnel using professional equipment.
- After the accident is handled, please immediately contact the authorized dealer of authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for check and repair.
- 10. Battery power system recovery

The power battery used in this car is a lithium ion system, which is installed under the floor of the car body and may cause pollution and harm to the environment if handled at will. The BJEV vehicle waste power batteries shall be recycled as follows according to the provisions of the Interim Measures for Recycling Management of New Energy Vehicle Power Battery jointly issued by the Ministry of Industry and Information Technology, the Ministry of Science and Technology, the Ministry of Environmental Protection and other relevant national ministries and commissions:

When the new energy vehicle meets the scrapping requirements, the new energy vehicle owner shall send the vehicle to be scrapped
to a qualified scrapped vehicle recycling enterprise to disassemble the power battery. The power battery owner (vehicle owner, battery
leasing enterprise and operating enterprise) shall hand over the waste power battery to the recycling service station designated by

#### **User Notices**

BJEV vehicle manufacturer. The power battery owner shall bear corresponding legal responsibilities if he (she) hands over the waste power battery to other unqualified units or individuals, removes and disassembles the power battery without permission, resulting into environmental pollution or safety accidents.

- The recycle of BJEV waste power battery is paid that owner sends waste power battery to recycling service station designated by BJEV for evaluation and recycling of the waste power battery after fixing a price on site. For BAIC BJEV Waste Battery Designated Recycling Service Network, please call 400-810-8100 for enquiries.
- 11. The air conditioner should not be adjusted too low or too high because using the air conditioner or heater will shorten the range of your car by 10% ~ 20%.
- 12. Gently stepping on the accelerator pedal is safe and "fuel-efficient", which makes your driving more pleasant and comfortable.
- 13. Your car has an energy recovery system, which will charge the battery on your car at the time of coasting in "D" or "S" or decelerating by depressing the brake pedal.

### **Table of Contents**

1. Safe	operatifioon instructions	1
Safe	driving	2
Seatl	oelt	7
SRS	system	18
Child	safety	36
Safet	y Labels	43
2. Ope	rating System and Equipment	44
Drive	r cab	45
Start	and stop the vehicle	88
Car li	ghts and visual field	115
Seats	and storage facilities	131
Air c	onditioner system- (electric air conditioner).	147
Air c	onditioner system (auto A/C)	154
Ente	tainment navigation system	160
Intell	igent •Inclusiveness •Butler	165

. Drive Guide	166
Starting and Driving	16
Brake System	179
Steering System	19 <sup>.</sup>
Panoramic image system (AVM)*	19
Lane departure warning system (LDW)*	20
Intelligent High Beam Assist (HMA)*	20
Constant cruise control*	20
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)	20
Early warning assistant braking system	21
Low-speed pedestrian warning system	22
Tire pressure monitoring system	22
Parking sensors and parking rear view system *	22
Complete vehicle control	23
Power battery	23
Charge system description	
Driving skills	24

4. Maintenance	253
Safety maintenance	254
Interior maintenance	274
Exterior maintenance	277
Tires	284
Accessories and Modifications	291
Power battery quick-change system	292
5. Accident Handling	293
Driver's tools	294
Fuse replacement	298
Replace the bulbs	306
Vehicle lifting	306
Emergency traction	307

6. Technical Data	311	
Vehicle identification number (VIN)	312	
Drive motor and reducer	313	
Vehicle nameplate	314	
Vehicle parameters	315	
7. Breakdown Call	324	
Breakdown Call	325	

### 1. Safe operatifioon instructions

Safe driving	
Seatbelt	
SRS system	1
Child safety	3
Safety Labels	4

### Safe driving

#### **General Introduction**

This chapter introduces the important information, operating tips, suggestions and safety precautions regarding safe driving, and please read them carefully. For your and passengers' safety, Please read carefully and observe the relevant regulations.

#### **∕** WARNING

Please be sure to carry this manual with your vehicle. And if you lend or resell your vehicle to others, please be sure to hand over this manual to the new car owner.

## Ensure the vehicle is in the safety driving state

Tire burst or mechanical failure are extremely dangerous. In order to reduce the possibility of such problems, the tire and vehicle states should be checked regularly. Each periodic maintenance item specified in BAIC BJEV maintenance information schedule should be completed.

#### Adjust front-row seats correctly

Seat belts provide the desired protection when the backrest is positioned as perpendicular as possible, and the driver and passengers maintain a straight back sitting posture. Please avoid placing the seat in a position that affects the correct wearing of the seat belt. Before driving, the driver's seat back and passenger's seat back shall be adjusted to the vertical position. All passengers shall wear seat belts properly while leaning against the seat back.

#### Control the driving speed

Speeding is the main cause of casualty accident from collision. The faster the speed is, the greater the risk is. Do not ignore the specified maximum speed limit and the safety conditions for speeding during driving.

#### Proper placement of all child occupants

Children should be properly placed in the seats on both sides of the rear row. When children are too young to wear seat belts, they must be properly placed in the child restraint device, and the child lock should be set to the LOCK state. Do not leave children alone in the car

## You should always wear a seat belt while driving the vehicle

Seat belts provide the best protection in all types of crashes. Airbags are designed to inflate only in the event of a moderate to severe front collision, although they can be used to supplement seat belts. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, you must also make sure that you and all passengers wear seat belts correctly.

### Special precautions for the hazard of airbags

Airbags will also cause serious or even fatal injuries to occupants sitting too close to them or not properly protected although they can make a protective effect. It is most dangerous to infants, young children and short adults. Please be sure to follow all the instructions in this manual

#### Do Not Drink and Drive

You shall not drive after drinking because your response speed to environmental changes will be reduced. The more you drink, the slower your response will be. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive.

#### **∕** WARNING

- When driving, do not distract from external factor, for example, talk to passengers or make a telephone call:
- Do not drive your vehicle when your reaction capacity weakens.
   For example, ingestion of drugs, alcohol and drugs will weaken people's reaction ability.
- Follow the traffic laws and speed limits strictly.
- You should always pay attention to reduce the speed, so that the speed is in a running state that matches the road conditions, traffic flow and weather conditions.

#### **Precautions for Use of Power Battery**

- The power battery is installed under the vehicle floor and care shall be taken when the vehicle runs over special roads such as mud, potholes, curbs, high speed bump, sidewalk slopes, etc., to avoid scratching or damaging the power battery!
- Please drive the vehicle carefully when passing the road with deep ponding (wading depth exceeding 300mm) to avoid short circuit, leakage or other

- damage caused by long-term soaking of the power battery in the water.
- If the power battery is scratched or damaged due to collision during driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance.
- Non-professional personnel are strictly forbidden to disassemble, check and repair the power battery to avoid electric shock injury due to improper operation!

### **Driver's correct sitting gesture**

#### **Correct Sitting Posture of Driver**

Correct driving posture has a direct influence on driving safety and fatigue.



Figure- Distance between driver and steering wheel

For your and passengers' safety and to reduce injury and death risk during accidents, we recommend driver to operate as follows:

- Adjust the forward and backward movable seat to the appropriate position, so that the knee joint is slightly bent until the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and clutch pedal are fully depressed.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the chest and the steering wheel is at least 25cm. Make sure you can hold the highest point of the steering wheel even if your elbow is slightly bent.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the middle of the head restraint is flush with the middle of the driver's ear, and make the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Adjust driver's seat backrest to the proper position, and make driver's back and seat backrest well contacted.
- Adjust the rearview mirror to the proper position.
- Wear the seat belt correctly.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- If your chest is too close to the steering wheel, you cannot get effective protection from airbags, and can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag.
- Your hands should always hold the steering wheel outside edge (at Point 9 and Point 3) to ensure you can see all meters and indicators on the combination instrument.
- Adjust the seat so that the steering wheel is facing the driver's chest, which can effectively reduce the possible injury caused by the airbag triggering.
- While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.

## Correct sitting position of front seat passenger

To ensure front passenger safety and reduce injury and death risk in accidents, the front passenger shall operate as follows:

- The front seat passenger should move the seat as far back as possible, leave ample space between his/her chest and the dashboard, so as to get the most safety protection by an inflating front airbag.
- Adjust the backrest so that the back fits with the seatback.
- · Wear the seat belt correctly.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the front seat.

#### **∱** WARNING

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- If the passenger is too close to the dashboard, the airbag system can not provide effective protection, causing a severer injury to the passenger.
- During driving, do not place both feet on the dashboard, and do not extend feet out of the window or cross legs on the seat; always place both feet in the footwell, otherwise, injury is easily caused when in emergency braking or accidents.
- While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking or accident.

## **Correct Sitting Position of Rear-row Seat Passengers**

In order to ensure the safety of riding, the rear row passengers shall operate as follows:

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- · Sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the rear sea and on the floor.
- · Wear the seat belt correctly.
- When carrying young passenger, related regulations must be followed to take proper protection measures.

### Adjust head restraint correctly





#### **∱** WARNING

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- If the passenger is too close to the dashboard, the airbag system can not provide effective protection, causing a severer injury to the passenger.
- During driving, do not place both feet on the dashboard, and do not extend feet out of the window or cross legs on the seat; always place both feet in the footwell, otherwise, injury is easily caused when in emergency braking or accidents.
- While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking or accident.

#### Pedal area

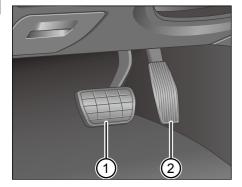


Illustration -Pedal position in driver's footwell

- Brake pedal
- Accelerator pedal

When the vehicle is running, it must be ensured that all pedals can be pedaled to the bottom and returned at all times without any resistance.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Do not store any items in the driver's side footwell as items may slip into the pedal area and obstruct pedal movement. In case of emergency braking or emergency, the driver can't operate the brake pedal, which can easily lead to accidents.
- It is strictly prohibited to drive the vehicle wearing high-heeled shoes and slippers. The heels may prevent the brake pedal from being floored; Slippers may cause slipping when depressing the brake pedal so that the maximum braking force cannot be applied in time, which is easy to cause accidents.

#### Foot pad on the driver's side

The pedal pad must be fixed in the footwell and shall be checked that it is close to the carpet after installation, and ensured that there is a certain distance between the pedal pad and the brake pedal and accelerator pedal, so that there is no interference between the pedal pad and the pedal.

#### **MARNING**

- Make sure the foot pedal pad is fixed in the footwell securely.
- The interference of brake pedal by pedal pad and other items will affect the vehicle braking and may cause serious traffic accidents.
- Do not lay other mat or covering on the foot pedal pad installed in place. Doing so can shrink the pedal travel, hindering the pedal movement and cause traffic accidents.
- After cleaning the foot pedal pad removed from the vehicle, be sure to re-fix it during re-installation.

#### Seatbelt

#### General Introduction

For your safety and the safety of others, be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

In this chapter, you can learn about the importance of seat belts, how they work, and how to wear and adjust them correctly. Please read all the information and warning instructions in this chapter carefully.

- Wear a seat belt in accordance with the requirements described in this manual.
- Ensure that the seat belt functions normally and is not damaged
- Improperly wearing a seat belt or not wearing a seat belt raises the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- In case of emergency braking or accident, wearing safety belt correctly can greatly reduce the injury degree of passengers. Therefore, all drivers and passengers must wear seat belts all the way.
- Be sure the pregnant women or the disabled wear seat belts properly. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, these passengers will also be seriously injured. The best way to protect unborn babies is to protect pregnant women. Therefore, pregnant women must wear seat belts when riding a car.
- The protective effect of seat belt can be reached only when it is worn correctly. Failure or incorrect wearing of seat belts will raise the risk of injury and death.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Before starting the vehicle, all occupants must wear the seat belt on their seats and have the belt fastened correctly all the way. This must be done even when driving in the urban area or on a short trip to ensure the safety of occupants.
- Two people should not wear the same seat belt (even children).
   When driving with children, they should choose the appropriate child restraint systems to protect children according to their height and body shape.
- Do not loosen the properly worn seat belt when the vehicle is moving.
- The seat belt shall not pass over fragile or hard objects (such as glasses, ballpoint pens, etc.) to prevent occupants from being injured.
- The seat belt tab must be correctly inserted into the buckle and locked. Wearing the seat belt incorrectly will affect its protective effect.

#### **↑** WARNING

- When wearing a seat belt, take off a loose and heavy coat (such as a coat), so as not to affect the fit between the seat belt and the body and its protective function.
- The dirty seat belts may affect the function of the seat belt retractor.
   Therefore, The seat belts must be kept clean at all times.
- Even pregnant women should always wear seat belts. simultaneously, the seat belt must fit down to the hip as much as possible to prevent pressure from being applied to the lower abdomen.
- Pregnant women should sit straight behind and away from the steering wheel or dashboard as far as possible, so as to reduce the injury to pregnant women and fetuses caused by accidents or airbag triggering.
- Make sure that there is no paper or other items in the belt buckle. Otherwise, the latch plate and buckle cannot engage securely.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Serious injury can occur in the event of an accident if the seatbelt is loose or cracked and the seatbelt connection, automatic retractors or locking element is damaged. Therefore, all safety belt components should be checked regularly.
- Do not repair, adjust, install and remove the seat belt retractor or any component on the seat belt by yourself. The seat belt shall not be modified in any way. The removal and installation of seat belt components can only be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.
- Any seat belt damaged, stretched or deformed in an accident must be replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV even if there is no obvious damage or deformation on the surface. Meanwhile, be sure to check the seat belt anchor for damage.

Other parts of this chapter will explain in more detail how to maximize your safety.

However, note that it is impossible to completely avoid casualties in a serious collision even if the seat belt is correctly worn and the airbag has been deployed.

#### Why always wear seat belt

Seat belt can reduce impact injury of the passenger as much as possible by reducing passenger's forward movement inertia when a front collision of the car occurs

#### Driver's seat belt unbelt warning light



Figure-Driver's seat belt unbelt warning light

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if the main driver's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than or equal to 25km/h, or the driving distance is more than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the

text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

## Front passenger's seat belt unbelt warning light



Figure-Front passenger's seat belt unbelt warning light

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if the front front passenger's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than or equal to 25km/h, or the driving distance is more than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

#### **Physical Principles of Frontal Impact**

While driving, both the vehicle and the occupants have energy (kinetic energy) which depends on the vehicle speed and the occupants' mass. The larger the vehicle speed and the mass, the more the energy upon impact. In which, the vehicle speed is decisive. For example, the released kinetic energy at 50km/h is 5 times that at 25km/h.

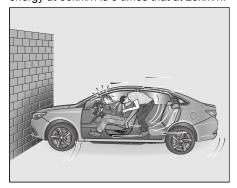


Figure-Vehicles carrying drivers and passengers without seat belts clash into brick walls.

The occupants without seat belts are not "combined" with the vehicle, and still move forward at the speed before the collision during decelerating in the event of a frontal collision. The physical principles of collision introduced in this example are applicable not only to the frontal collision, but also to all other types of collision accidents.

## Consequences for driver sand passenger's unbelt warning light

Many people believe that in the event of a mild collision, they can control their body with their own hands to avoid injury. This is a wrong view!

During a crash, the driver sand passenger's unbelt the seat belts still move forward at the speed before the crash due to inertia, but the vehicle dose not.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Do not get your body under control by hand. Doing so can raise the chance of being seriously injured.
- Airbags can never replace seat belts. It is necessary to wear seat belts correctly whether the vehicle equipped with airbags or not.
- The rear seat passengers must wear the seat belts properly as well.



Figure-The driver who is not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently during the collision

Even if the speed is very low, the force acting on the human body in case of collision is very large, and the passengers can't control their bodies at all with their hands. The passengers who don't wear seat belts will be thrown forward and slammed into the steering wheel, dashboard, windshield or anything on the way.



Figure-The rear-row passengers who are not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward violently during the collision.

Passengers in rear seats also must buckle up correctly, otherwise, they may be thrown forward fiercely in an accident. The rear seat passengers not wearing the seat belts can be injured and endanger other occupants.

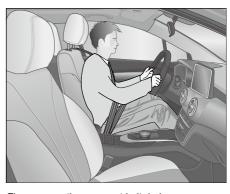


Figure-correctly worn seat belt during emergency braking can effectively protect the driver

Wearing the seat belts properly can restrain the driver and passengers in the desired positions to avoid injury. Wearing the seat belts properly can prevent the driver and passengers from losing control and avoid being thrown.

Seat belt can absorb most kinetic energy produced by collision. Besides, the vehicle anti-collision area and other passive safety systems can also absorb the energy produced by collision and assist seat belt to further reduce the potential injuries to passengers.

4

#### **↑** WARNING

- Make sure seat belts are in place and positioned properly.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. Never let two children use the same seat belt.
- While driving, always keep a correct sitting position and wear a seat belt properly. When the vehicle is moving, if you and your passengers unfasten seat belts, this will raise the chance of being seriously hurt or killed during a crash.
- To avoid damage to the seat belt, be sure to prevent the seat belt from getting stuck or rubbing sharp edges.
- To wear your seat belt properly, try not to wear loose and bulky clothing as far as possible (if you have worn one, take off it.) to ensure the seat belt to fit your body.
- Keep the seat belt system clean and in good condition. Never get foreign matter or liquid into the buckles.
- Do not to disassemble and repair seat belts by yourself.

### **Buckle up correctly**

Wear your seat belt correctly

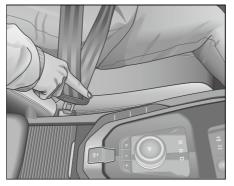


Figure-Seat belt bolt and buckle

Adjust the seat correctly, slowly pull the seat belt bolt from the retractor, pull the seat belt over the chest and crotch, insert the seat belt latch into the seat belt socket of your seat, and press down until you hear the meshing sound.

Length of safety belt can be automatically adjusted as per the driver size and seat position At the time of emergent brake or traffic collision, the retractor will lock seat belt. If your body moves forward fast, the seat belt will also be locked tightly. The safety belt can be shortened or lengthened slowly and smoothly to fit your body.

The safety belt can be fully retracted and then pulled out. If the seat belt cannot be pulled out from the retractor, pull the safety belt hard and then release it, so that the safety belt can be pulled out smoothly from the retractor.

#### **↑** WARNING

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance as soon as possible.

#### How to wear rear middle seat belt



Figure- Correct wearing position of rear seat belt When taking the rear-row middle seat belt, sit straight on the seat and make the back fit the seat back as much as possible. Pull the seat belt out of the retractor, insert the seat belt bolt into the buckle, and belt the seat belt. The bolt clicks when locked in the retractor.

#### **↑** WARNING

The seat belt not fastened properly cannot provide good protection during a crash, resulting in serious personal injury.

- To let the seat belt play a full role, make sure the seat back is upright and the occupant sits well back in the seat and wears the seat belt properly.
- Make sure to insert the latch plate into its own buckle.

#### i Hint

The wearing method of rear seat belts are the same as that of front seat belt.

#### Seat belt wearing part



Figure- Correct adjustment position of safety belt

The seat belt is designed taking full account of the bone structure of the body (such as pelvis, sternum and shoulder).

Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully. Improper sitting posture of passengers will reduce the protective effect of safety belt and easily lead to casualties. If the airbag is triggered by an accident, the impact of the airbag may cause serious injury or even casualties to the passengers who sit improperly.

#### **↑** WARNING

When the seat back is in the upright position and the passengers have correctly worn the seat belt, the seat belt can give full play to its protective role. Incorrectly wearing the seat belt in the event of an accident can seriously injure the occupants!

- The seat belt must pass through the center of the occupant's shoulder, and must not be tied to the neck.
- The seat belt must be flat and close to the occupant's chest.
- Seat belts must pass through the pelvis of passengers, and must not be pressed against the stomach. The seat belt must be flat and close to the pelvis, and tighten the seat belt as required.
- If the seat belt is not fastened tightly enough and slips to the stomach or neck, it may cause serious injury to the passengers.

#### Adjust the seat belt height

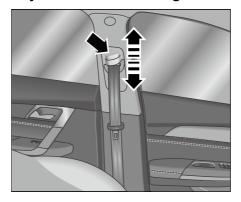


Figure-Installation Position of Seat Belt Height Adjustment Mechanism

Operation steps are as follows:

- 1. Hold the seat belt guide part.
- Move the guide up and down to adjust the safety belt to a position suitable for its own body shape.
- 3. Release the seat belt guide part.
- After the seat belt height adjustment is completed, pull the seat belt hard and check whether the guide is firmly locked.

#### **∱** WARNING

Do not adjust the height of the safety belt during driving.

#### Hint

 For the front-row seats, the wearing position of the seat belt can also be adjusted through the seat height adjustment device.

#### Wearing seat belt for pregnant women



Figure- Wearing position of seat belt for pregnant women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect you and your fetus is to always wear the seat belt correctly during driving or riding, and keep the belt as low as possible over your hip.

During driving, you should maintain an upright sitting posture and move the driver's seatback to a suitable position to ensure that you can operate the vehicle freely. When sitting in the front seat, you should also move the seat backward as much as possible. This can reduce the risk of injury to the mother and fetus due to a crash or frontal airbag inflation.

At every prenatal check-up, be sure to ask your doctor if you are suitable for driving a vehicle.

#### Wearing seat belt for Child

The safety belt of this model is designed for adults. It is recommended to equip special child restraint devices for children under the age of 12 and no more than 1.5m in height.

#### Unbuckle the seat belt

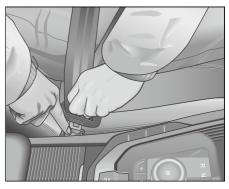


Figure-Release the seat belt bolt from the buckle

- Press the red button next to the seat belt buckle, and the seat belt tab pops out from the buckle.
- In order to easily retract and not damage the seat belt, grasp the locking tongue by hand and return the seat belt, and the retractor will automatically retract the seat belt.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When the vehicle is moving, if you and your passengers unfasten seat belts, this will raise the chance of being seriously hurt or killed during a crash.

#### Note

- Do not unfasten the seat belt until the vehicle is completely stationary.
- When the seat belt is unfastened, after two lock latches are unfastened, you need to retract seat belt by guiding with your hands, to prevent passengers from being injured by above metal lock latch when the seat belt is fast retracted.

#### Seat belt retractor

The front-row seat belt in the vehicle is equipped with the blast pretensioning retractor. The sensor activates the belt retractor in serous frontal impact and rear impact. The retractor will retract the belt in the direction of rewinding to slow the forward movement of the passenger.

The explosive pretensioner can only be used once. In case of minor frontal collision, side or rear collision, rollover and accidents without significant frontal force, the seat belt retractor does not work.

#### Note

- The seat belt retractor will produce a little smoke when triggered. And this is normal, not a car fire. No need to worry.
- The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.

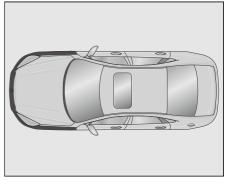


Figure - Schematic Diagram of the Accident Site on the Side of the Vehicle

In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

- An accident occurred at the front of the vehicle (shaded in the figure), but the seat belt retractor did not work.
- Any seat belt tightener or its surrounding area is scratched, broken or otherwise damaged.

# Recycling and disposal of seat belt retractor

The seat belt pretensioner is a component of the seat belt system. Any work on the seat belt tensioner or the disassembly and assembly of the seat belt pretensioner due to the maintenance of other parts must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BJEV, otherwise the seat belt may be damaged, and the seat belt pretensioner may not work normally in case of an accident.

The removed seat belt pretensioner must be disposed following relevant regulations in order to avoid personal injury or environmental pollution. And authorized dealer of BJEV is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.

#### **!** WARNING

If the safety belt retractor is repaired by the authorized dealer or professional of BAIC BJEV, or the safety belt is not unbelted correctly according to regulations, the safety belt may not be tightened in case of an accident, thus increasing the risk of casualties.

#### **↑** WARNING

- It is not allowed to repair, remove or install seat belt retractor components without authorization.
- The work on the seat belt, including the disassembly and assembly of the seat belt due to the maintenance of other parts, must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.
- The seat belt retractor can only be activated once. The activated seat belt retractor in an accident must be replaced.

#### Maintenance of seat belts

Replace the seat belt assembly when there are signs of rupture on the seat belt. Always check whether the safety belt on your vehicle shows signs of rupture, fracture and wear, especially the condition of fixing points and adjusting devices. Do not bleach or dye the safety belt to prevent chemical materials from polluting the safety belt.

Three tests to check seat belts:

- Pull the tensioned seat belt fast near the buckle, and it should be fastened and locked.
- Pull the seat belt out completely Check whether pull-out and retraction are smooth, and check for signs of wear or rupture.. Let the safety belt retract automatically, and check whether the retraction is smooth, continuous and complete.
- Pull the bolt and pull the seat belt forward quickly. The locking mechanism shall be able to automatically lock and prevent the seat belt from being pulled out.

If the seat belt fails any of the above tests, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

Any work on the seat belt or disassembly and assembly of the seat belt components due to the maintenance of other parts must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV, otherwise the seat belt may be damaged, and may not work normally in case of an accident.

### SRS system

#### General Introduction

In case of accident, wearing safety belt correctly and keeping correct sitting posture can effectively reduce the injury caused by accident to passengers To make triggered airbag system perform protective functions fully, driver and passengers shall wear seat belts correctly, adjust driver seat correctly, and use suitable child restraint device to protect children in vehicles.

#### **∱** WARNING

When the airbag is deployed, the dust aroused will irritate the skin or eyes, and may also cause some people with asthma to aggravate their asthma. After the airbag is deployed in case of an accident, thoroughly wash all exposed skin with warm water and warm soap.

#### **Functions of airbags**

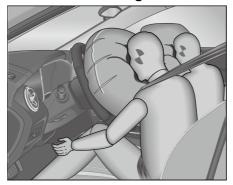


Figure- Triggered to fully inflate the front row frontal airbag

In case of serious collision between the vehicle and obstacles, the airbag will quickly open an air cushion filled with air event collision injury caused by inertia.

In case of serious collision between the vehicle and other objects, the airbag will inflate at a high speed in a very short time. If the passengers sit incorrectly at this time, they may be seriously injured or even killed by the airbag. Therefore, all drivers and passengers must always keep a correct sitting position when driving. If the car has a sharp collision, passengers unfastened seat belt may be thrown away to airbag in-

flation area, the inflating airbag may cause serious injuries and deaths of passengers, especially the children.

The front-row driver and passengers should keep a maximum distance with the airbags to ensure that the front row frontal airbag can fully inflate when triggered, thus effectively protecting the passengers.

The determining factor of whether the airbag is triggered or not is the deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle measured by the control unit at the time of collision. The front airbag will not be triggered if the vehicle deceleration or acceleration measured by the control unit during the collision is less than the preset reference value of the control unit.

#### **MARNING**

In case of vehicle collision, the key factor determining whether to trigger the airbag is related to the deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle measured by the control unit. Even if the vehicle is obviously damaged, it does not mean that the airbag should be triggered.

### Why wear seat belts and maintain correct sitting posture

In order to ensure the best protection after triggering the airbag, you must always wear the seat belt correctly and keep the correct sitting position during driving.

For the safety of you and your passengers, you should pay attention to the following items before driving:

- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel correctly.
- Adjust the front passenger seat position correctly.
- Adjust the head restraints correctly.
- Assembling child seats can ensure the safety of children in the car.

#### **∱** WARNING

- The deployment of the airbag is completed at a high speed in an instant. If you have an incorrect sitting posture at this time, it may cause fatal injury. Therefore, it is necessary to ensure that all occupants maintain a correct sitting posture during driving.
- In case of emergency braking or collision accident, occupants who have not worn seat belts may be thrown forward to the deployment area of the airbag, which may cause fatal injury to occupants, especially the children.
- The front-row driver and passengers should keep a maximum distance with the airbags to ensure that the front row frontal airbag can fully inflate when triggered, thus effectively protecting the passengers.

#### Hazards of installing child seats in frontrow passenger seats



Figure-The inflated airbag slammed into the child seat when the vehicle had an accident

It is forbidden to install the child seat with its back to the driving direction on the front passenger seat, because in case of an accident, the triggered front passenger airbag will slam into the child seat, throwing the child to the door, roof or seat back, causing fatal injury to the child.

#### **Airbag Fault Warning Light**



Figure- Airbag Fault Warning Light

An airbag fault warning light located on the instrument alerts you to the status of the airbag system, including the control unit and circuit connections.

When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" position, the system warning light lights up for several seconds (self-test) and then goes out.

If the following conditions occur, it means that the airbag system is faulty, and the airbag and seat belt retractor may not work normally in case of collision. At this time, you must go to the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to inspect the vehicle:

- When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" gear, it will self-check if the airbag fault warning light is not on.
- When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" position, the airbag fault warning light is on for several seconds and does not go out.
- During driving, the airbag fault warning light is ON.

#### **!** WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag system may not start the protection function normally.

## Repair, maintenance and scrapping of airbags

The components of the airbag system are installed in different parts of the vehicle. Any work on the airbag system or the disassembly and assembly of airbag system components due to the maintenance of other components must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BJEV, otherwise the airbag system may be damaged, and cannot normally trigger the airbag or does not trigger the airbag at all in case of an accident.

The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV is familiar with these regulations and can provide you with inquiry service.

If you want to resell the car, be sure to inform the new owner that the SRS system is installed on the car and the replacement date of the airbag components.

#### **∕** WARNING

Please check and repair the airbag system at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. If it is not repaired by the professional technician of the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV, it will inevitably raise the potential risk of accident casualties. When an accident occurs, the airbag cannot be triggered, or when no accident occurs, the airbag is triggered, which is particularly easy to cause serious injury or even death to drivers and passengers.

- Do not paste or cover anything on the soft plastic surface of the dashboard on the front of the steering wheel and the front passenger side airbag assembly, or make any modification to the above parts.
- Do not fix items such as Notepad and mobile phone holder on the windshield above the front passenger side airbag, otherwise they may hurt the personnel in the vehicle once the front airbag triggered.

#### **∴** WARNING

- When cleaning the steering wheel or dashboard, use only a dry cloth or a cloth wet with water, but do not use solvent-containing cleaning agents to clean the surfaces of the dashboard and the airbag assembly cover. Because the solvent will cause the surface of the above components to be loose, once the airbag is triggered, the broken plastic may cause serious injury to the passengers.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once, and all triggered airbags must be replaced.
- Any work on the airbag or the disassembly and assembly of airbag components due to the maintenance of other vehicle components (e.g. steering wheel) must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. Because the authorized dealers of BAIC BJEV have been equipped with necessary special equipment and tools, maintenance materials and qualified professional technicians.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Please do not attempt to modify the front bumper or body structure yourself.
- Do not install the cup holder or telephone rack and other appliance on the cover lid of the airbag module.
- Please do not attempt to repair, remove or install components of the airbag system yourself.
- The undeployed airbag is potentially dangerous when disposing of the vehicle. Therefore, before disposing, it must be safely deployed by professionals in a certain environment.

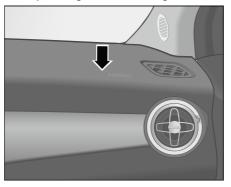
# Frontal airbag Driver's frontal airbag



Figure-The driver frontal airbag is installed in the steering wheel.

The driver frontal airbag is installed in the steering wheel-arrowhead-.

#### Front passenger frontal airbag



The passenger frontal airbag is installed in the dashboard.

The passenger frontal airbag is installed in the dashboard above the glove box-arrow-.

If the occupants are seated correctly and have the seat belt fastened correctly, the frontal airbag will work together with the seat belt to provide additional protection for the chest and head of the occupants in case of serious collision.

The front airbag mainly consists of three parts:

- 1. Electric control and monitoring device.
- Two airbags with gas generators on the front.
- Airbag fault warning light located in instrument cluster.

The airbag is monitored by the electronic monitoring system of the airbag control unit. When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test

When the vehicle encounters serious frontal collision, the frontal airbags will assist seat belts in additionally protecting the heads and chests of driver and front passenger.

The airbag system does not replace your seat belts. It is an integral part of the complete vehicle safety protection system. Remember: Only when the seat belt is worn correctly and the seat is adjusted correctly can the airbag system play the best protection role. Therefore, not only because of regulations, but also for safety reasons, seat belts must be worn at all times.

#### **WARNING**

Occupants will be seriously injured when the airbag is deployed if they have not worn the seat belt or worn it improperly even if the front airbag is equipped. Therefore, occupants must wear their seat belts.

#### Note

The deployment and release of the side airbag are completed in a very short time, and can not protect against the second side impact that may occur later.

In order to ensure that the frontal airbag can inflate and deploy normally, there must be no obstructions between the frontal airbag and the occupant.

#### Note

Do not place objects near or over the airbag assembly above the steering wheel and passenger side glove box. Because when the vehicle has a serious collision enough to cause the airbag to deploy, these objects will fly out and hurt the passengers in the vehicle.

#### How does the frontal airbag operate

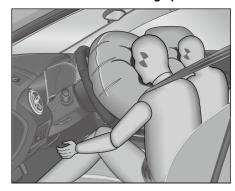


Figure- Triggered to fully inflate the front row frontal airbag

In case of collision, the airbag control unit monitors the deceleration or acceleration caused by the collision to determine whether the front airbag should be deployed.

Whether the frontal airbag works depends not on the driving speed of the vehicle, but on the colliding object, the collision direction and the speed of the vehicle deceleration. Therefore, some minor collisions may cause injury because the front airbag is not deployed. On the contrary, the damage of some relatively small structures will lead to the deployment of frontal airbag.

When the vehicle encounters serious frontal collision, the front row frontal airbags will assist seat belts in additionally protecting the heads and chests of driver and front passenger.

#### Note

 Frontal airbags are not intended for rear impact, minor frontal impact or side impact, nor for vehicle overturning. simultaneously, it does not work when the vehicle is under emergency braking, driving on bumpy roads or passing through depressions.

#### **↑** WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly or wrong sitting position can cause serious injury or even death during a crash.

- Before starting driving, make sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly and sit in correct posture.
- To ensure the inflation space between the airbag and the front seat passenger, the front seat passenger must not hold a child in his/her arms, any pet, or any other items when the vehicle is moving.
- After the airbag completely inflates, it immediately starts deflating so it won't interfere with your visibility.
- Do not repair, adjust or modify any component of the front airbags without authorization.
- Airbags inflate only once. If your airbags ever inflate during a crash, the airbags must be replaced by a authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

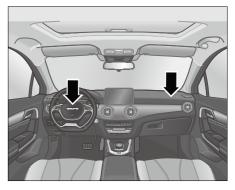


Figure - deployment position of frontal airbag in case of collision at the front of vehicle

In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

- The frontal airbag has been deployed.
- The front of the vehicle was involved in an accident, but the frontal airbag did not deploy.
- The cover part of the steering wheel or the instrument panel area covering the passenger airbag (arrow position in the figure) is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

#### The moment of impact

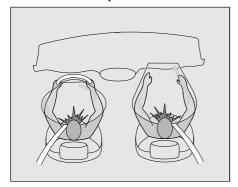


Figure - Driver's side and passenger's side frontal airbag impact moment

The deployment of the frontal airbag is completed in an instant, with great force and accompanied by a loud noise. The deployed frontal air bag and seat belt restraint system work together to limit the movement range of the driver, thereby reducing the degree of injury to the head and trunk.

#### Note

Some parts are hot after the airbag is deployed. Do not touch them before cooling.

The air bag is specially designed to discharge gas under the occupants' inertia forward compression, and gently support occupants' head and upper body. After the accident, the airbag will continue to exhaust and restore a good front view.

In order to provide timely protection in the event of an accident, the airbag expands at a high speed in an instant. Small smoke and dust will be generated when the airbag is deployed, which is completely normal. Don't think there is a fire in the car.

#### Seat position

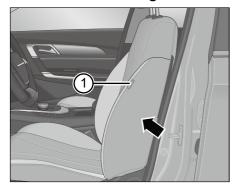
In order to ensure the best protection function in case of severe impact, the frontal airbag must be deployed within a certain period of time.

The side airbag will cause facial abrasion or damage to other body parts during deploying if comes too close to the side airbag (see "Correct Sitting Posture of Driver" on page 003 for details).

#### ∕!\WARNING

In order to reduce the damage caused by inflating and deploying the front airbag, you must always wear your seat belt. In addition, the driver and front passengers must adjust their seat positions to leave enough distance between the personnel and the front airbag.

#### Front row side airbags\*



Side airbag for driver's side seat

The side airbag is located in the backrest pad on the door side of the front seat - arrow -, and its "air bag" is marked at ①.

The side airbags consist of:

- Electric control and monitoring device.
- Side airbags located in the outer edges of the seatbacks of the front seat.
- Airbag fault warning light located in instrument cluster.

The airbag is monitored by electric monitoring system located in airbag control unit. When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" (green), the airbag fault warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test.

#### **∴** WARNING

If the airbag fault warning light keeps on, it indicates that there is a fault in the system, and the airbag may not be deployed in case of collision accident. Please drive the vehicle to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.

If the driver and front passenger are seated in the correct posture and fasten the seat belt correctly, the side airbag will provide additional protection for the upper body in case of serious side impact.

When the system is triggered, air will be inflated into the airbags. To provide ideal additional protection during accidents, the airbags will inflate quickly. When inflating, the airbags will produce a small quantity of fogs. Do not worry, as this is normal. The airbag fully filled with air can buffer the driver's and front passenger's inertia movement, and reduce the driver's and front passenger's risk of upper body being injured by door.

#### Note

- The airbags do not replace your seat belts.
- The deployment and release of the side airbag are completed in a very short time, and can not protect against the second side impact that may occur later.

In order to ensure the normal expansion and deployment of the side airbag, there shall be no shelter between the side airbag and the driver and passengers.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Driver and front passenger shall not lean their head or body against the door, put their arms on the door or out of the window, or place objects between them and the doors on both sides.
- Do not use any seat cover that is not approved by BAIC New Energy, otherwise it will reduce the protective effect of the airbag or block the deployment of the airbag.

# How does the side airbags operate

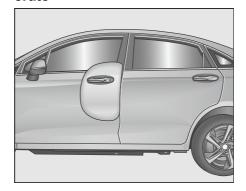


Figure - Side airbag deployment position

In the event of a side collision of the vehicle, the airbag control unit determines whether the side airbag should be deployed according to the signals detected by the side impact sensor and the acceleration sensor in the controller unit.

Whether the side airbag works or not depends not on the vehicle speed, but on the object involved, the direction of collision and the change of vehicle acceleration. Therefore some minor collisions may cause injury because the side airbag is not deployed. On the contrary, the damage of some relatively small structures may lead to the deployment of the side airbag.

The airbag system cannot replace the seat belt, but is an integral part of the passive safety of the complete. Please note that the airbag system can play the best protective role only when it cooperates with the properly worn seat belt. Therefore, not only because of regulations, but also for safety reasons, seat belts must be worn at all times

#### Note

The side airbag is not aimed at front and rear impact and minor side impact, nor is it aimed at vehicle overturning. Also, it does not work in emergency braking or driving on bumpy roads or passing over pit holes.

The deployment of side airbag is instantaneous, with great force and great sound. The deployed side airbag and the safety belt restraint system work together to limit the movement range of the driver and front passengers, thereby reducing the risk of chest injury.

#### Note

Some parts are hot after the airbag is deployed. Do not touch them before cooling.

Side airbag may release some particles after deployed, which is not a fault. However, these particles may cause skin pain and must be thoroughly removed from the eyes or abraded skin by rinsing.

The specially designed airbag may control the release of gas according to the load of occupants, so as to gently support the head and upper body. Smoke and dust will be generated when the airbag expands, which is completely normal. Don't think it's a fire in the car.

#### **!** WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly or wrong sitting position can cause serious injury when the side airbags inflate death during a crash.

- To let the side airbags play a full role in protection, the driver and front passenger should wear the seat belts properly.
- Do not repair, adjust or modify any component of the side airbags without authorization.
- Side airbags inflate only once. If your airbags ever inflate during a crash, the airbags must be replaced by a GAC Motor dealer.
- When the side airbag has fault, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection immediately, otherwise, the airbag will not be triggered or triggered normally in a collision.

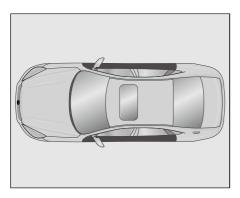


Figure - Schematic Diagram of the Accident Site on the Side of the Vehicle

In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

- · Either side airbag has been deployed.
- An accident occurred at the door, but the side airbag did not deploy.
- The surface of the seat with side airbag is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

# **Seat position**

In order to ensure the best protection function in case of severe impact, the side airbag must be deployed within a certain period of time.

The side airbag will cause facial abrasion or damage to other body parts during deploying if comes too close to the side airbag (see "Correct Sitting Posture of Driver" on page 003 for details).

# Side air curtain

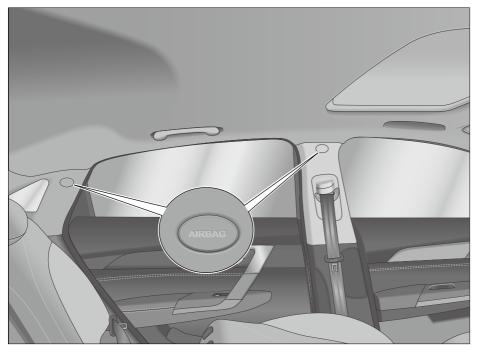


Figure - Side air curtain position

Some models are equipped with left and right air curtains, which are installed along the edge of the roof between pillar A, pillar B and pillar C and their identification covers on pillar B and pillar C are marked with the words "AIR BAG".

The side air curtain mainly consists of three parts:

- 1. Electric control and monitoring device.
- 2. Side air curtain
- 3. Airbag fault warning light located in instrument cluster.

The side airbag is monitored by electric monitoring system located in airbag control unit. When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test.

# **↑** WARNING

If the airbag fault warning light is on continuously, it indicates that there is a fault in the system, and the airbag may not be deployed in case of collision. Please drive to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

During a severe side impact, the control unit system inflates the side airbag on the side suffered impact.

Once the system is triggered, the gas generated by the gas generator will immediately fill the safety curtain at high speed. The air curtain inflates rapidly to cover the side windows and door posts.

To provide ideal additional protection during accidents, the airbags will inflate guickly. When the air curtain inflates, a small amount of smoke may be released, which is a normal phenomenon and does not indicate that there is a fire in the car, so there is no need to worry.

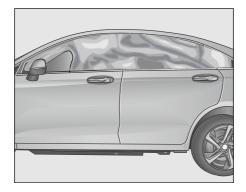


Figure - side air curtain deployment diagram

The inflated air curtain can reduce inertial motion so as to reduce the risk of injury to driver and passenger's upper bodies effectively. Under the weight of the occupants, the gas escapes from the air curtain at a specific rate through the specially designed air curtain fabric gap, so as to reduce the injury risk of the occupants' head and upper body from hitting the door side.

During a severe side collision, air curtains provide additional protection to the driver and passenger's heads and upper bodies together with seat belts.

In case of side impact, the air curtain can effectively reduce the injury of upper body collision parts of front and rear passengers. In addition to the basic protection function, the seat belt can also keep the occupants in the front seats and rear seats in the position where the safety air curtain can play a full protection role.

The function of the safety air curtain system is monitored by the electronic monitoring system. When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test.

The air curtain can never replace the seat belt, but it is an integral part of the passive safety system of the complete.. Remember, The safety air curtain can effectively play a protective role only when the occupant wears the seat belt correctly and adjusts the head restraint to the appropriate position. Therefore, when driving, all drivers and passengers must wear seat belts all the way, which not only abides by traffic rules, but also ensures their own safety.

The system may trigger the frontal airbags, air curtains and front seat side airbags simultaneously in the event of certain collisions.

# **⚠ WARNING**

In order to ensure the normal expansion of the safety air curtain, there shall be no obstructions between the safety air curtain and the driver and passengers.

Occupants shall not lean their head or body against the door, put their arms on the door or out of the window, or place objects between them and doors on both sides.

#### Note

- The air curtain only provides additional protection in case of severe side impact, and cannot replace the role of seat belt.
- The deployment and release of the air curtain are completed in a very short time, and can not protect against the second side impact that may occur later.

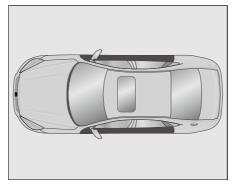


Figure - Schematic Diagram of the Accident Site on the Side of the Vehicle

In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

- Either air curtain has been deployed.
- An accident occurred at the door, but the safety air curtain was not deployed.
- The front post, rear post or roof side beam trim (gasket) with safety air curtain inside is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

# **Seat position**

In order to ensure the best protection function in case of severe impact, the airbag must be deployed within a certain period of time.

The side air curtain will cause facial abrasion or damage to other body parts during deploying if comes too close to the side air curtain (see "Correct Sitting Posture of Driver" on page 003 for details).

# Airbag non-deployment condition

In many types of accidents, such as rear collision, side collision, collision at an angle, special rear end collision, overturn accident and some special collisions, the airbag may not deploy. In a secondary, tertiary, low-speed or other collision in a serial collision accident, even if the airbag is deployed, it cannot provide additional protection.

# Rear-end collision of vehicle

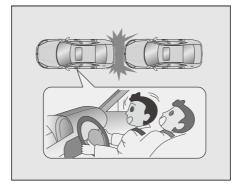


Figure-rear-end collision of vehicle

The frontal airbag is ejected and deployed from the front of the driver's side or passenger's side. The front airbags may not work in case of rear end collision or impact, in which the occupants move towards the backrest under the action of inertial force, and the airbags play no protective effect on the occupants.

# Side impact (vehicles without side airbag / air curtain)

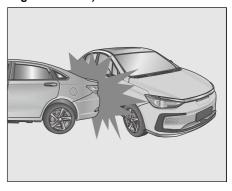


Figure- Side impact of vehicle

When a side impact occurs, the passengers move towards the impacted direction, so the airbag deployed from the front cannot protect the passengers, and the frontal airbag may not work at this time.

#### Beveled collision (angular collision)

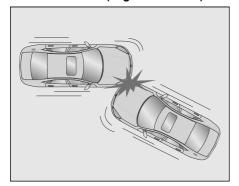


Figure-Oblique Collision of Vehicles

The front airbags may not work in case of collision at an angle, in which the impact energy received by the airbag system may not be large enough to trigger the front airbag.

#### Rear-end collision

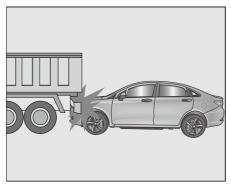
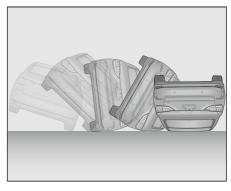


Figure-rear-end collision of vehicles

In case of collision accident, the driver instinctively makes emergency braking, and then the diving phenomenon of sinking in front of the vehicle body occurs. The front airbags may not work in case of subduction collision or rear end collision, in which the front of the vehicle inserts under the other vehicle, and the impact energy received by the collision sensor is not large.

#### **Overturn Accident**



Vehicle overturned

The frontal airbag may not be deployed in a turnover accident, because even if the frontal airbag is deployed, it will not provide proper protection to the occupant.

# **Special Collision**

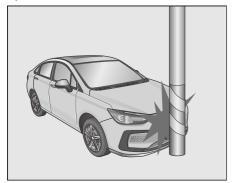


Figure-Special Collision of Vehicles

The front airbags may not work if the vehicle collides with some object, such as a pole or tree, in which the collision point is at one place and not all of the collision energy is transfered to the sensors.

#### Collision at the bottom of a vehicle

In case of the vehicle subjecting to severe impact such as flying over steps, hitting road shoulders or hard objects, crossing deep pits, etc., the airbag may deploy when the detected deceleration reaches the airbag deployment conditions due to the impacted rigid vehicle components even if the deformation of the vehicle is small.

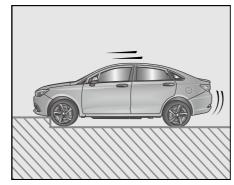


Figure-Vehicle Impact on Shoulder or Hard Object

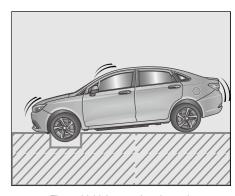


Figure-Vehicle crossing deep pit

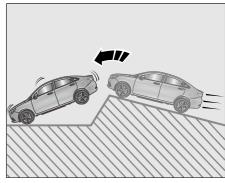


Figure- Vehicle flying over the steps

# **Child safety**

# **General Introduction**

According to accident statistics, children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in the rear seat rather than the front seat.

We strongly recommend that you restrain the child under 12 years old in the rear seat. Based on the age, height and weight, use the child seat or the existing seat belt to ensure safety of the child seated in the rear seat. For the sake of safety, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat just behind the front passenger's seat.

For the installation and use of child seats, follow the regulations and the seat manufacturer's instructions.

We recommend that you keep the Child Seat Instructions in the vehicle together with the Owner's Manual.

# Safety instructions for child seats



Figure -Do not hold infants while driving
Do not hold infants in your arms when driving, otherwise emergency braking or accidents may cause injury or death to infants.

Proper use of a child seat can reduce risk of injury significantly. As a driver, you must always pay attention to the safety of children in the car:

- Select an appropriate child seat and use it properly.
- Wear seat belts correctly in strict accordance with the regulations of child seat manufacturers.
- Do not distract your attention due to the children in your vehicle when driving.
- The drive shall have a rest every two hours during long-distance driving;

# **∕** WARNING

- Do not let children stand or kneel on seat in driving.
- Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully.
- Do not hold children or infants during driving, otherwise they may be injured or killed in the event of an accident.
- Only a child seat of right size can provide effective protection to the child.
- Do not leave children alone in a vehicle. Because of big climate difference from place to place, the in-vehicle temperature may become extremely low or high. A child left alone in a vehicle could be hurt fatally.
- If children are left alone in the car, they will be injured by vehicle parts. If children open the car door, they may hurt others. If children leave the vehicle, they may be injured or collided by passing vehicles.

# **↑** WARNING

- Without a child restraint system, do not let a child with a height below 1.5m use the conventional seat belt in the vehicle. Doing so can cause the child's stomach or neck to be injured during emergency braking or in a crash.
- If appropriate child protective devices are not equipped, the seat belt will not be worn correctly and the risk of injury to children will raise because their bones and muscles are not fully developed.
- Never let two children use the same child seat.
- Be sure to read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions and precautions.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations to install and use a child seat. The national laws and regulations shall prevail.

# **⚠** WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious or even fatal injury to children in the event of an accident, braking or sudden steering, you should:

- You should place children under 1.5 meters in height or under 12 years of age in a dedicated child restraint in a suitable seat in the car, as seat belts do not provide the protection they deserve.
- If the child protective device is not correctly installed on the appropriate seat, the child will not be properly protected and may suffer serious or even fatal injury in the event of an accident, hard braking or sudden turn. When installing child restraint devices, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the correct use of child restraint devices must be observed.
- If you attach a child restraint device to the passenger seat, you must move the seat as far back as possible.

# **↑** WARNING

- Do not let children sit on the lap of other passengers while driving. Because children cannot be adequately protected in the event of an accident, strong braking or sudden steering. They may be thrown up and collide with parts or occupants in the vehicle, resulting in serious or even fatal injuries.
- Do not put cushion and other items under the child protective device. And the child protective device must fit closely with the cushion.
- If the child protective device or its fixture has been damaged or has been subjected to excessive load in an accident, the child seated in it may suffer serious or even fatal injury in the event of an accident, braking or sudden turn.
- Child protective device and its fixture that are damaged or have been subjected to excessive load in the accident must be inspected in a service center with professional service qualification in time, and shall be replaced if necessary.



Figure-Warning mark for installation of child seat Do not place the rearward facing child protective device on the front seat, otherwise the back of device will be subject to the great impact energy from the deployment of the airbag, resulting in serious injury or even death.

# Child seat

# Child Seat Classification (for reference only):

Grade 0/0+ child seat

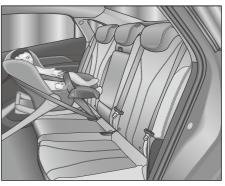


Figure-Grade 0/0 + Child Seat with Back to Driving Direction

For restraining an infant under 18 months and 13 kg, it is better to use the 0/0+ grade child seat which can be adjusted to the liedown position.

#### Grade 1 child seat



Figure-Grade 1 child seat facing the driving direction

For restraining an infant or low-age child under 4 years of age and between 9 kg and 18 kg, it is better to use the grade 1 child seat equipped with a build-in seatbelt.

#### Grade 2 child seat



Figure-Grade 2 child seat facing the driving direction

For a child below 7-year old, weighing 15 kg  $\sim$  25 kg, we recommend you use the three-point seat belt for the grade 2 child seat.

#### Grade 3 child seat



Figure-Grade 3 child seat facing the driving direction

For restraining a child over 7 years of age and between 22 kg and 36 kg, with a height below 1.5 m, it is better to use the three-point seat belt together with the grade 3 child seat.

# **⚠ WARNING**

Child restraints secured by ISOFIX child seat anchorages do not provide adequate protection for children weighing more than 22 kg. Therefore, do not place a child weighing more than 22 kg in a child restraint device secured by an ISOFIX child seat anchorage. If the child weighs more than 22 kg, the child restraint should be secured with a three-point seat belt.

# **↑** WARNING

- The shoulder belt should fit over the collarbone and across the chest. Never allow the shoulder belt to cross the neck. Make sure that the belt fits the body properly.
- Lap belt must cross the hip instead of the belly; it shall be fitted stably and be adjusted when necessary.

# i Hint

For a child with a height more than 1.5 m, he/she can use the existing seat belt. No child seat is needed.

# Install the child seat correctly

Before installing child seat in the rear row seat, adjust the front row seat to proper position according to child seat size and child body size; in case of a collision or emergency braking, the child who sits in the rear row seat will not be injured by the hard objects in the vehicle. In addition, when child sits in the rear row seat, the child will be injured by the inflated airbags.



Figure- warning mark on front passenger side sun visor

The safety marks on the front passenger side sun visors. They warn you of the front airbags' hazards. Read these marks carefully and follow their instructions.

# Installing an child seat with ISOFIX

The child seats equipped with ISOFIX fixture system can be installed on the seats of the vehicle with the appropriate devices in a quick, easy and safe manner.

Be sure to remove and install the child seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions.

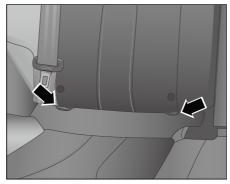


Figure - The ISOFIX retaining ring of child seat is installed on the seat

#### Installation:

- Insert the child seat onto the ISOFIX retaining ring until the child seat is firmly engaged with an engaging sound.
- Draw two sides of child seat to check whether the child seat is installed firmly.

There are two ISOFIX retaining rings on the seats on both sides of the rear row, and the ISOFIX retaining rings of the rear-row seats are installed on the body.

# **⚠** WARNING

- The retaining ring can only be used to connect the ISOFIX child seat.
- Do not connect the fastening belt, object or child seat other than ISOFIX one or any other to the retaining rings. Otherwise, it is very easy to cause casualty accidents.

#### 1

# Installing a child seat with ISOFIX system and Top Tether

Be sure to remove and install the child seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions.

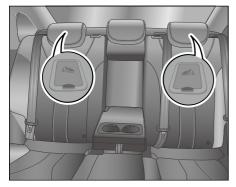


Illustration-ISOFIX retaining ring on rear window sill panel

# Installation:

- Push the head restraint behind the child seat slightly upward.
- Pass the top tether through the head restraint, or place the top tether on both sides of the head restraint according to the structure of the child seat, and then pull the top tether rearward to the rear storage tray near the rear windshield.

- Press the ISOFIX child seat against the retaining ring until the child seat engages.
- Draw two sides of child seat to check whether the child seat is installed firmly.
- Fasten top fastening rope ISOFIX retaining ring and top fastening rope hook on rear window sill panel.
- Tighten the top fastening rope so that the child seat is close to the rear-row seat back.

# **Top Tether**

The top tether provides an additional connection between the ISOFIX fixed child protective device and the passenger seat, which helps to further reduce the risk of injury.

# **MARNING**

- The ISOFIX retaining ring on the rear window sill panel can only be used for ISOFIX systems.
- Do not attach a non-ISOFIX child seat or any other item to the retaining ring.

# **Safety Labels**

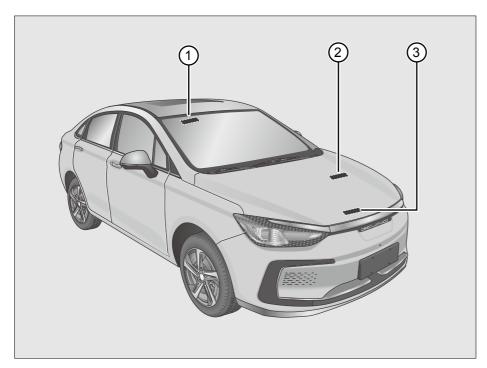


Figure - List of safety label positions

The location of the safety label is shown in the figure:

- The airbag warning label ① is located on the surface of the sun visor on the front passenger side;
- The battery warning label ② is located on the battery;
- Cooling fan warning label ③ is located on the upper side of cooling fan;

These labels are used to alert you to the potential danger of causing serious injury. Please read these labels carefully. If the label falls off or is blurred, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV in time for replacement.

# 2. Operating System and Equipment

Driver cab	4
Start and stop the vehicle	8
Car lights and visual field	11:
Seats and storage facilities	13
Air conditioner system- (electric air conditioner).	14
Air conditioner system (auto A/C)	15
Entertainment navigation system	16
Intelligent •Inclusiveness •Butler	16

# **Driver cab**

# Layout of instrument and control mechanism

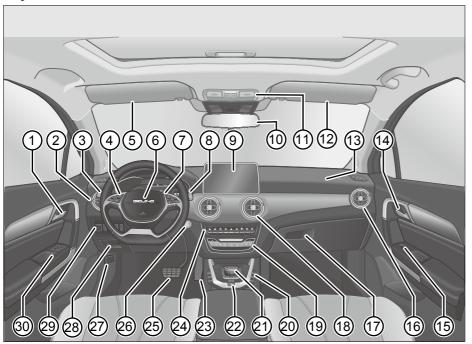


Figure-Instrument and control mechanism list

- Driver's door inside handle
- Driver's side A/C air outlet
- Lighting control lever
- Multi-function switch on left side of steering wheel
- 5. Driver's sun visor
- Driver's seat airbag
- Multi-function switch on right side of steering wheel
- 8. Windshield wiper control lever
- 9. Central control display screen
- Manual anti-glare in-vehicle rearview mirror
- 11. Interior ceiling light
- 12. Front passenger side sun visor,
- 13. Front passenger seat airbag
- Front passenger side door inside handle
- Control panel of front passenger side door glass
- 16. Front passenger side A/C air outlet

#### Layout of instrument and control mechanism

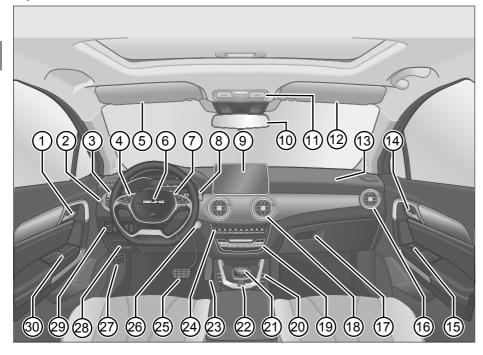


Figure-Instrument and control mechanism list

- 17. Glove box
- 18. Central air vent
- 19. Multimedia control panel
- 20. Pedestrian warning system switch button
- 21. Shift knob
- 22. Electronic parking
- 23. Accelerator pedal
- 24. A/C control panel
- 25. Brake pedal
- 26. One-button start button
- 27. Opening handle of front engine hood
- 28. Driver side storage box
- 29. Left switch group of dashboard (including backlight brightness adjustment knob, headlight height adjustment knob, rearview mirror adjustment knob \*, panoramic image switch \*, trunk opening switch, VTOL opening switch \*, lane departure warning switch \*, ESP OFF button \*, Hill descent control switch \*)
- 30. Driver side door control panel

# Warning indicator light (type I)\*

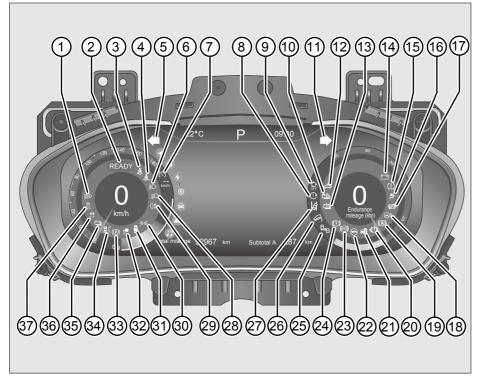


Figure-In the combination instrument: warning light and indicator light

- 1. Smart High Beam Assist Indicator light
- READY indicator light
- B. Driver' seat belt unbelt warning light
- . Front passenger's unbelt warning light
- Left turn signal indicator light
- . High-beam light indicator light
- Cruise system indicator light \*
- Brake energy regeneration level indicator light
- Brake energy regeneration OFF indicator Light
- 10. High pressure OFF indicator light
- 11. Right turn signal indicator light
- 12. Parking system fault indicator light
- 13. Power battery failure alarm light
- 14. 12V battery fault indicator light
- 15. Tire pressure system fault indicator light
- 16. Airbag fault indicator light
- 17. Electric parking brake fault indicator light

- 18. Electric power steering fault indicator light
- Auto Park / Auto Park fault indicator light
- 20. Fault alarm light of motor system
- 21. Power anti-theft certification failure indicator light
- 22. Drive power limit indicator light
- 23. ABS fault indicator light
- 24. Brake system fault indicator light
- 25. Blind spot monitoring indicator light
- 26. Hill descent / Hill Descent fault indicator light\*\*
- 27. LDW ON indicator light.
- 28. Low beam light indicator light
- 29. Rear fog light indicator light.
- 30. Position light indicator light
- 31. Door ON Indicator light.
- 32. Charging gun connection indicator light
- Electric Parking system fault indicator light
- 34. Self-adaptive cruise indicator light
- 35. Charging alerting light/indicator light

- 36. ESP working indicator light
- 37. ESP OFF indicator light \*

#### Note

The LCD screen may lag in severe cold areas (- 25 °C and below) and can not even be started normally in extremely cold areas. However, with the raise of the temperature in the vehicle, the instrument will gradually return to the normal working condition.

# i Hint

- The effect picture of the combination instrument and the values in the picture are only used as examples to provide reference for the user, indicating the display content and meaning, and are not used as the basis for the display effect and values of the actual vehicle.
- The indicator lights, interface, prompt and other information displayed on the combination instrument of different models under different configurations are not exactly the same, and the specific information shall be subject to the combination instrument of the actual vehicle.

Smart High Beam Assist is a headlight control feature that can be recommended to activate or deactivate the high beam. This function can optimize the use of vehicle headlights during night driving. If no vehicle and other traffic participants are detected, the system will automatically activate the high beam. And if a meeting or following or street lighting condition exists, the high beam will be turned off. The indicator light is green when the smart high beam assist function is on, yellow when the smart high beam assist function is faulty, and white when the smart high beam assist function is in standby

2. READY indicator light READY (green).

When the "Start/Stop Button" is in "RUN" mode, the light is on, it means the vehicle is ready for normal driving, if the light is off, it means the vehicle is not ready, if the light is off for a long time, it means The vehicle is malfunctioning or user misoperation occurs.

Driver' seat belt unbelt warning light (red)

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if the main driver's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than or equal to 25km/h, or the driving distance is more than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

# i Hint

If the warning light lights up during driving when the seat belt is fastened, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible while ensuring safety.

4. Front passenger seat belt unbelt indicator light (red)

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if the front front passenger's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than or equal to 25km/h, or the driving distance is more than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

# i Hint

If the warning light lights up during driving when the seat belt is fastened, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible while ensuring safety.

5. Left turn signal indicator light  $\langle \neg \rangle$  (green) Indicates that the left turn signal light is on, and when the left turn signal or hazard warning light is turned on, the indicator light flashes.

If the indicator light flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the left turn signal light is faulty or the bulb is damaged. If the indicator light flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the left turn signal light is faulty or the bulb is damaged.

Indicates that the high beam light is on. It lights up when the high beam light of the headlight is on.

Cruise system indicator light (Green/Grey)\*

When the cruise system is activated, the indicator light is green; When the cruise system is on standby, the indicator light is gray.

8. Brake Energy Regeneration Level Indicator ① ② ③ (Green)

In the energy recovery mode, this light will light up to show the current braking energy recovery level. The braking energy recovery level is divided into three levels: 1-3. The higher the level, the stronger the energy recovery intensity.

9. Brake Energy Regeneration OFF Indicator Light ♀ (yellow)

The vehicle has the function of energy recovery. When the vehicle brakes in the energy recovery mode, the traction motor generates current and stores it in the power battery. When the light is on, it indicates that the brake energy regeneration function is turned off. When the vehicle power battery is fully charged, the system will automatically turn off the energy recovery function to protect the battery. When the ABS works, the energy recovery is withdrawn, and the indicator light "Q" on the on-board computer display does not light up.

10. High voltage OFF indicator light (yellow)

After the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if the high-voltage power system is not connected, the light will be on and the vehicle will not be able to drive; If the high-voltage system is connected, the light goes out.

# **MARNING**

If the light is on during driving, please pull over to the side to ensure safety, and immediately contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEVfor inspection and repair.

Indicates that the right turn signal light is on, and the indicator light flashes when the right turn signal light or emergency warning light is turned on.

If the indicator light flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the right turn signal light is faulty or the bulb is damaged. Please check whether the turn signal is faulty, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

12. Fault light of complete vehicle system ∠ (red)

If the electronic control system in the vehicle fails, this light will be on. If the warning light is on during driving, please pull over, as long as it's safe to do so and contact the authorized dealer of BJEV for maintenance.

13. Power battery failure alarm indication (red)

The warning light is on, indicating that the power battery is faulty.

# **⚠ WARNING**

If the warning light is on during driving, please pull over, as long as it's safe to do so, because the power battery may not supply power normally at this time, and you must contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

14. 12V battery fault indicator light (red) When there is a problem with the 12V battery or the DC-DC system, the 12V battery charging fault indicator light lights up. If the indicator light lights up, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance as soon as possible.

# **↑** WARNING

- If the indicator light is on while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair while ensuring safety.
- If no measures are taken, it will lead to serious driving performance problems.

 Fault Indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (!) (yellow)

If the tire pressure is abnormal, the warning light will be on, the instrument will display the tire fault information with graphics displaying the specific location and data of the faulty tire.

#### Note

If the indicator light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately under the condition of ensuring safety, and timely detect whether each tire is abnormal according to the information prompted by the instrument

16. Airbag fault warning light ♣ (Red)

If the airbag fault light does not go out or lights up during driving, the combination instrument displays "airbag fault", indicating that there is a fault in the airbag system.

# **↑** WARNING

If the fault light is on, the airbag system cannot be guaranteed to be in normal state. Under the condition of ensuring safety, contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

17. Parking system fault indicator light

(P) (red)

When the electronic parking brake system fails, the indicator light lights up. When the electronic parking brake system fails, the indicator light lights up.

# **♠** WARNING

- If the indicator light is on, do not drive the vehicle. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.
- If the indicator light is on while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair while ensuring safety.

18. EPS fault indicator ⊗! (yellow)

The electronic steering system only works when the power system enters the starting state. EPS automatically adjusts the steering power according to the vehicle speed, steering wheel angle and torque acting on the steering wheel.

Remember! if the steering assist function decreases or fails, the steering wheel must be turned with much greater force than normal steering. When the power system is turned off, the steering assist function does not work.

### **↑** WARNING

If the light is on during driving, please pull over to the side to ensure safety, and immediately contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEVfor inspection and repair.

19. Auto Park Indicator light (A) (green)/
Auto Park fault indicator light (A) (red)

The driver does not need to keep the brake pedal all the time in order to keep the vehicle still. AVH keeps the vehicle stationary through ESP pressure keeping. When the automatic parking function is turned on, the indicator light lights up in green; When the automatic parking function fails, the indicator light lights up in red. This indicator light does not have self-checking function. If the automatic parking fault indicator lights up, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

20. Fault alarm indicator light of brake system (!) (red)

This indicator light is used to monitor the working status of the motor drive system. When there is a fault in the motor system, the warning light will be on.

# **WARNING**

If the light is on during driving, please pull over to the side to ensure safety, and immediately contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEVfor inspection and repair.

21. Power anti-theft certification failure indicator light ধৃষ্ট্ৰী (yellow)

When the power anti-theft certification failure indicator light fails, the indicator light is on.

# Note

If the power anti-theft authentication failure indicator light lights up continuously after using the smart key correctly, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

22. Drive power limit indicator light ⊕ (yellow)

When the vehicle drive system or battery system fails, the SOC is too low, and the battery temperature is too high or too low, the vehicle driving power will be limited, and the indicator light will be on.

# **MARNING**

If the indicator light is on during driving, the performance of the complete will be greatly reduced. Under the condition of ensuring safety, you can drive to the destination at low speed, but you should contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

23. ABS fault indicator (yellow)

When the "start / stop button" is in the "run" mode, the indicator light is on for about 3 seconds for self-test, and then goes out.

If the indicator light lights up during driving, it indicates that the ABS system is faulty

# / WARNING

- If the indicator light is on, do not drive the vehicle. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.
- If the indicator light is on while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair while ensuring safety.

24. Brake system fault indicator light (1) (red)

When the "START/STOP" button is in the "RUN" mode, the brake system fault light "()" in the combination instrument lights up to perform the brake system self-inspection. After that, the brake system fault light goes out. If the brake system fault light does not go out or lights up during driving, it indicates that there is a fault in the brake system. At this time, it is necessary to check the brake fluid level. If the brake fluid level is normal, there are other faults in the brake system.

# **♠** WARNING

If the fault light comes on during driving:

- Stop the vehicle immediately under safe conditions.
- Do not step on the brake pedal repeatedly, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

25. Blind spot monitoring indicator light (green / white) \* / blind spot monitoring fault indicator light | u<sub>□</sub> (red)\*

The indicator light is green when BSD function is on, white when standby, and not displayed when it is off; When the BSD function fails, the indicator light is red. If the fault indicator lights up, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

26. Hill Descent indicator light (green) / Hill Descent fault indicator light / (red)\*

HDC is a cruise control function, which can help the driver go downhill at low speed (maximum 50% slope), which is controlled by ESP active pressurization without the driver's active intervention. When HDC is working, the green light is on; When HDC fails, the red light is on. This indicator light does not have self-checking function. If the hill descent fault indicator light is on, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

27. LDW ON indicator light (green / white) / LDW fault indicator light (yellow)\*

The indicator light is green when LDW function is on, white when standby, and not displayed when it is OFF; When the LDW fails, the indicator light is red. If the fault indicator lights up, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

28. Low beam indication (green)

Indicates that the low beam light is on. It lights up when the low beam light of the headlight is on.

- 29. Rear fog light indication (yellow) Indicates that the rear fog light is on. It lights up when the rear fog light of the headlight is on.
- 30. Position light indications 0.0% (green) It indicates that the position light (or the main light switch) is on. It lights up when the position light (small light) is on.
- 31. Door-open indicator light (red)

This indicator light is used to remind the driver to close all doors.

If any door is not closed, the door opening indicator light will be on. When all doors are

closed, the indicator light goes out.

32. harging gun connection indicator light \_\_\_\_ (red)

When this light is on, it indicates that the charging gun is connected. At this time, it is strictly prohibited to move the vehicle.

33. Electric parking system (EPB)fault indicator light (P) (red)

When the electronic parking brake switch is turned on, the indicator light lights up.

34. self-adaptive cruise control indicator light (green /grey)/ self-adaptive cruise fault light ₹! (yellow)\*

When self-adaptive cruise is activated, the indicator light is green; When self-adaptive cruise standby, the indicator light is gray; In case of self-adaptive cruise failure, the indicator light is yellow.

35. Charging alerting light/indicator light (yellow)

When the driving range is lower than the charging reminder range set by the user, the indicator lights up. At this time, the power battery should be charged as soon as possible. In addition, when the vehicle is in the charging state, if the indicator light is on, it indicates that the vehicle is charging.

36. ESP work indicator light \ ₱ (yellow)

ESP is an electronic stability system, helps the vehicle maintain dynamic balance to ensure the best stability of the vehicle by analyzing the driving state information of the vehicle and making a response. When the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, this light is on for self-test, and then goes out after self-test. ESP indicator light flashes when ESP is working; In case of ESP fault, the ESP indicator light is always on.

This light indicates whether the ESP system is OFF. When the ESP system is OFF, this light is ON.

# **Multi-functional display**

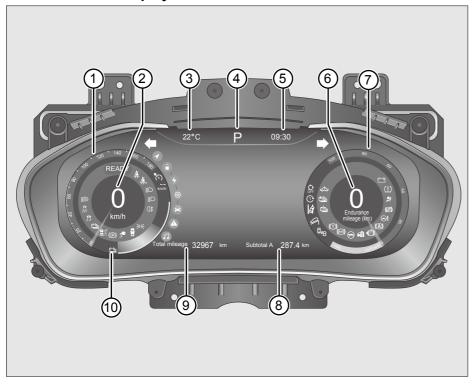


Figure- General view of combination instrument

- 1. Speedometer
- 2. Digital speed
- 3. outdoor temperature
- 4. Gear position display
- 5. Time display
- 6. Driving mileage
- 7. Wattmeter
- 8. Subtotal mileage
- 9. Total mileage
- 10. Electricity meter

#### Wattmeter



Figure- Trip computer display screen: Wattmeter The virtual pointer dial on the right side of the combination instrument is a wattmeter with an indication range of - 100% ~ 100%. The wattmeter is used to indicate the in-

with an indication range of - 100% ~ 100%. The wattmeter is used to indicate the instantaneous power percentage of the drive motor. If the indication is in the range of 0% ~ 100%, it indicates that the driving motor is outputting power. If the indication is in the green area, it indicates that the power battery enters the energy recovery state.

# **Speedometer**



Figure- Trip computer display screen: Speedometer

The left virtual pointer dial of the combination instrument is a speedometer with an indication range of  $0 \sim 180 \text{km}$  / h. It is used to indicate the current speed of the vehicle.

# Digital speed



Figure- Trip computer display screen: Digital speed

Digital speed: displays the driving speed of the current vehicle, in km / h.

#### Power battery electricity meter



Figure- Trip computer display screen: power battery electricity meter

The power battery electricity meter is used to indicate the remaining power of the power battery.

#### Total mileage



Figure- Trip computer display screen: Total mileage

Total mileage: displays the total mileage of the vehicle since it was delivered from the factory, and the total mileage range

# Sub-total mileage

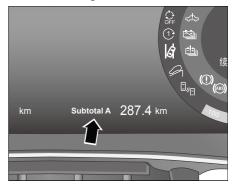


Figure- Trip computer display screen: Sub-total mileage

- Subtotal mileage A: the driving mileage in a certain section can be accumulated, and its mileage range is 0km ~ 9999.9km.
- Like subtotal mileage A, subtotal mileage B can accumulate mileage in a certain interval, and its mileage ranges from 0km to 9999.9 km. In the trip A/B interface, pressing and holding the "ENTER" button allows you to clear the corresponding trip.

# **Driving mileage**



Figure- Trip computer display screen: driving mileage

Displays the mileage of the current power battery remaining power.

# i Hint

- The minimum display accuracy of the instrument is 1km.
- The cruising range will be affected by driving mode, weather, temperature, driving environment and other data.

# **Temperature Display**

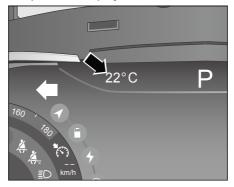


Figure-Trip computer display screen: Temperature display

Temperature display: Displays the current outdoor temperature.

# Time display

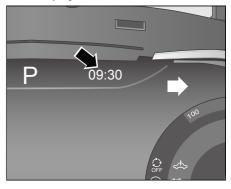


Figure-Trip computer display screen: Time display

Time Display: Displays the current time.

# Gear position display

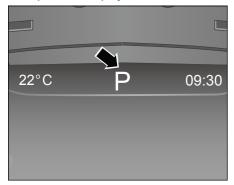


Figure-Trip computer display screen: Gear position display

Gear display: Displays the current gear of the vehicle

#### Guide bar

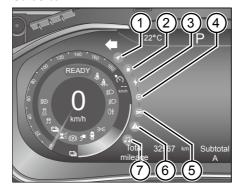


Figure-Trip computer display screen: guide bar

Operate the switch button on the left side of the steering wheel, and switch by pressing the "↑" or "↓" button. From top to bottom, they are: ① navigation interface, ② charging or ADAS interface, ③ power consumption page, ④ tire pressure interface, ⑤ vehicle information, ⑥ vehicle alarm content and ⑦ multimedia. The guide bar displays white, and the green circle is selected (aperture fades in and out). When the alarm priority of pop-up window is higher than MENU button, ENTER must cancel the pop-up window before entering the menu interface for inquiry, and the same is true for all LCD meters

#### **Navigation interface**



Figure-Trip computer display screen: Navigation interface

When the user turns on the navigation through the center console and sets the destination, the instrument will automatically enter the large screen navigation interface later. And also the user can switch to other display interfaces by using the buttons on the left side of the steering wheel (see "Setting Menu" on page 064 for details) based on their habits.

# **Charging Interface**

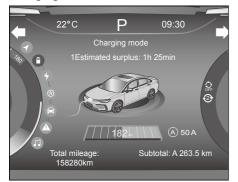


Figure-Trip computer display screen: Charging Interface

When the vehicle is charged, the instrument displays the charging mode and charging information.

# Power consumption interface

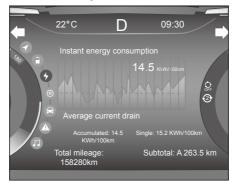


Figure-Trip computer display screen: Power consumption interface

Instantaneous power consumption: refers to the instantaneous power consumption intensity when the vehicle is running.

Average power consumption: refers to the power consumption calculated by on-board computer under comprehensive road conditions.

# Tire pressure (TPMS) display



Figure-Trip computer display screen: Tire Pressure Display

Indicates current vehicle tire pressure information.

#### Vehicle information interface

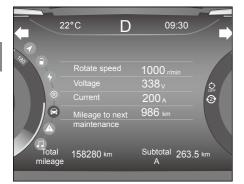


Figure-Trip computer display screen: vehicle information interface

Speed: Indicates the current speed of the drive motor

Voltage: Indicates the current voltage value of the power battery.

Current: indicates the current value of charging and discharging the current power battery, and indicates the discharging current value during driving, and charging current value during braking energy recovery.

The maintenance mileage shows the mileage from the next vehicle maintenance.

There are two ways to reset the maintenance mileage, one is to reset through the diagnostic tester (0-10,000km) and the other is to reset through the menu button (fixed 10,000km) (see "Vehicle Setting" on page 064 for details).

#### Vehicle fault alarm reminder

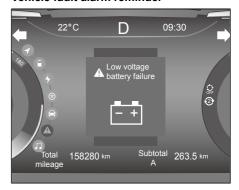


Figure-Fault reminder interface

When the vehicle becomes faulty, the fault alarm interface of the combination instrument displays a reminder message that the vehicle may be faulty, and you should have your vehicle checked at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible.

When the vehicle has no fault, it will display "no alarm information at present".

#### **Entertainment and informantion**



Other information from left to right are driving mileage, engine working time display, transmission oil temperature display (if any) and vehicle voltage display.

For Bluetooth incoming and outgoing calls, fade in and fade out. Insert the Bluetooth phone interface into the first interface (under the navigation interface, the Bluetooth phone interface will automatically narrow down to the status bar at the bottom of the page). After 2s of answering the call, the Bluetooth phone interface will narrow down to the status bar at the bottom of the page, and the call status bar will fade out and disappear after the call is over. When the third-party phone is connected, you can choose whether to answer the current phone, and the user of the central control interface switches to select the caller.

#### **General Hints**



Figure - General prompt interface

When the vehicle combination instrument interface displays such prompt information, the user can better understand the current vehicle status information.

# Setup menu

Left combination instrument control button of steering wheel

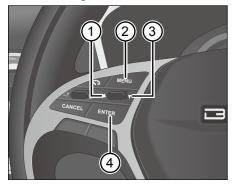


Figure- Left combination instrument control button of steering wheel

- Up button: for selection, press "↑" to switch options.
- Menu button: enter the setting menu, and the menu sub item returns to the upper layer
- Down button: for selection, press "↓" to switch options.
- ENTER button: confirm button, enter the menu sub-item, set the selected option.

#### **VEHICLE SETTING**

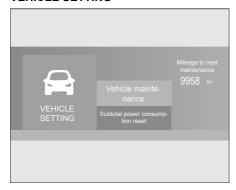


Figure -Vehicle maintenance

Short press the ENTER button to enter the vehicle maintenance option, and from the vehicle maintenance option, you can view the mileage until the next maintenance of the vehicle.

Menu button reset method: enter menu interface → vehicle maintenance → maintenance mileage, press MENU button for 5s and then ENTER button for 5s to pop up the maintenance mileage reset interface, and select confirmation to reset.

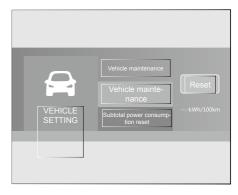


Figure -Subtotal electricity consumption

Used to show the average energy consumption in each RUN-OFF cycle (unit: kWh/100km). After the button is powered on, the average power consumption display value is updated every 1 km, which is displayed by the instrument.

When RUN is powered on, the user can manually clear it through menu options, see menu settings.| When the meter receives a subtotal energy consumption value of 0, it means that zero clearing is completed.

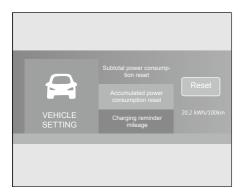


Figure -Accumulated Power Consumption

The cumulative historical average energy consumption of the complete vehicle is used to show the average energy consumption in the life cycle of the vehicle (unit: kWh/100km). After the button is powered on, the average power consumption display value is updated every 1 km, which is displayed by the instrument. The display range of cumulative power consumption is from 0.0 kWh/100km to 100.0 kWh/100km.

When RUN is powered on, the user can manually clear it through menu options, see menu settings.| When the accumulated energy consumption value received by the instrument is 0, it means that zero clearing is completed.

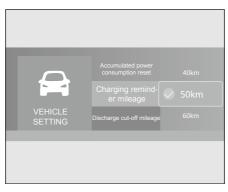


Figure -Charging reminder mileage

The charging reminder mileage can be set in the vehicle settings, and the charging reminder mileage can be set by dialing the up/down buttons. The range of the charging reminder mileage can be set to 30-100km.

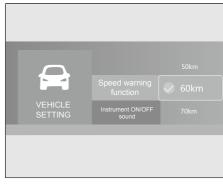


Figure -Discharge cut-off mileage\*

When the vehicle speed is 0, short press the "MENU" button to enter the menu options, and toggle up/down to switch to the vehicle speed reminder option.

After entering the speeding reminder setting interface, you can set the speed reminder. Press the up/down button to select between "OFF"50km/h"~"160km/h", press the "ENTER" button to confirm, and press the "MENU" button to restore the previous state.

The initial default overspeed reminder limit is 120 km/h, which will be restored if the user selects to restore the factory setting, otherwise the overspeed will be determined according to the last set value by the user. When the instrument sets the overspeed alarm OFF, the instrument no longer triggers the overspeed alarm function.

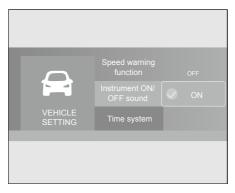


Figure -Instrument ON/OFF prompt tone

You can set the instrument ON/OFF prompt tone to ON or OFF through menu buttons. Select ON or OFF by turning the UP/DOWN button, and short press the "ENTER" button to confirm.

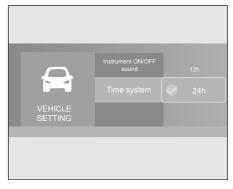


Figure - clock system

After entering the time system adjustment interface, you can select options by pressing the "UP/DOWN" button, and confirm the selected option by pressing the "ENTER" button.

# **Restore factory settings**



Figure-Trip computer display screen: Restore factory settings

Press the menu button to enter the setting interface, and select to restore the factory setting interface by operating the UP/DOWN button. After pressing the "ENTER" button, you will be prompted to confirm and cancel the option, and then press the "ENTER" button again to restore the factory setting.

# Warning and indicator light (type II)

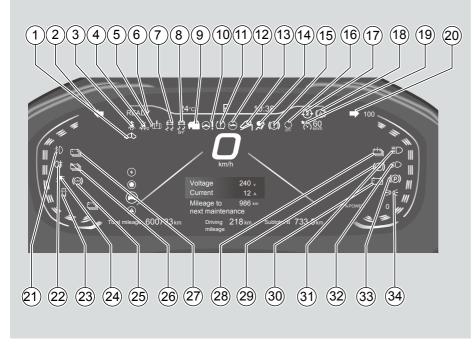


Figure: In instrument combination: warning light and indicator light

- 1. Parking system fault indicator light
- 2. Left turn signal indicator light
- 3. Driver' seat belt unbelt warning light
- 4. Front passenger's unbelt warning light
- 5. Fault alarm light of motor system
- 6. READY indicator light
- 7. ESP working/fault indicator light
- 8. ESP OFF indicator light \*
- 9. Power anti-theft certification failure indicator light
- 10. Electric power steering fault indicator light
- 11. Tire pressure system fault indicator light
- 12. Drive power limit indicator light
- 13. Hill descent / Hill Descent fault indicator light\*\*
- 14. Airbag fault indicator light
- 15. Brake system fault indicator light
- 16. Brake energy regeneration OFF indicator Light
- Brake energy regeneration level indicator light
- Auto Park / Auto Park fault indicator light

- 19. Cruise control indicator light
- 20. Right turn signal indicator light
- 21. Front fog light indicator light (Reserved)
- 22. Rear fog light indicator light.
- 23. Door-opened indicator light
- 24. Charging gun connection indicator light
- 25. ABS fault indicator light
- 26. High pressure OFF indicator light
- 27. Charging alerting light/indicator light
- 28. Power battery failure alarm light
- Electric parking brake fault indicator light
- 30. 12V battery fault indicator light
- 31. High-beam light indicator light
- 32. Low beam light indicator light
- Electric Parking system fault indicator light
- 34. Position light indicator light

 Fault indicator light of complete vehicle system (red)

If the electronic control system in the vehicle fails, this light will be on. If the warning light is on during driving, please pull over, as long as it's safe to do so and contact the authorized dealer of BJEV for maintenance.

2. Left turn signal indicator light (green) Indicates that the left turn signal light is on, and when the left turn signal or hazard warning light is turned on, the indicator light flashes.

If the indicator light flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the left turn signal light is faulty or the bulb is damaged. Please check whether the turn signal is faulty, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible

Driver' seat belt unbelt warning light 4 (red)

When the "start/stop button" is in the "ON" mode, if the driver's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than

25km/h, or the driving distance is more than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

# i Hint

If the warning light lights up during driving when the seat belt is fastened, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible while ensuring safety.

 Front passenger seat belt unbelt indicator light (red)

When the "start/stop button" is in the "ON" mode, if the front front passenger's seat belt is not unbelted, the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the driving distance is less than 500m and the driving time is less than 60s, the seat belt alarm symbol is always on, and the sound alarm is not triggered.

When the vehicle speed is more than 25km/h, or the driving distance is more

than 500m or the driving time is more than 60s, the instrument cluster starts to give an alarm, and the alarm symbol flashes, and the alarm if the seat belt is not unbelting sounds for 120s. When the indicator light is on, the LCD prompts the text "Please unbelt your seat belt", and the alarm ends. If it is still not unbelted, the alarm symbol will always be on.

#### i Hint

If the warning light lights up during driving when the seat belt is fastened, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible while ensuring safety.

Fault alarm indicator light of brake system (!) (red)

This indicator light is used to monitor the working status of the motor drive system. When there is a fault in the motor system, the warning light will be on.

#### **↑** WARNING

If the light is on during driving, please pull over to the side to ensure safety, and immediately contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEVfor inspection and repair.

- 6. READY indicator lightREADY (green). When the "Start/Stop Button" is in "ON" mode, the light is on, it means the vehicle is ready for normal driving, if the light is off, it means the vehicle is not ready, if the light is off for a long time, it means The vehicle is malfunctioning or user misoperation occurs.
- 7. ESP working/fault indication (yellow)\* ESP is an electronic stability system and the ESP indicator light flashes when passing; If the indicator light is normally on, it indicates that the ESP system is faulty, and the alarm 1 pop-up window displays the prompt message of "Check ESP", accompanied by a prompt tone. If the alarm indicator light is always on, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

- 8. ESP OFF indicator light  $\stackrel{\begin{subarray}{c}}{\wp}$  (yellow)
  This light indicates whether the ESP system is OFF. When the ESP system is OFF, this light is ON.
- 9. Power anti-theft certification failure indicator light এট্র (yellow)

When the power anti-theft certification failure indicator light fails, the indicator light is on.

#### Note

If the power anti-theft authentication failure indicator light lights up continuously after using the smart key correctly, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

#### 10. EPS fault indicator ⊗! (yellow)

The electronic steering system only works when the power system enters the starting state. EPS automatically adjusts the steering power according to the vehicle speed, steering wheel angle and torque acting on the steering wheel.

Remember! if the steering assist function decreases or fails, the steering wheel must be turned with much greater force than normal steering. When the power system is turned off, the steering assist function does not work.

11. Fault Indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (!) (yellow)

If the tire pressure is abnormal, the warning light will be on, the instrument will display the tire fault information with graphics displaying the specific location and data of the faulty tire.

#### Note

If the indicator light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately under the condition of ensuring safety, and timely detect whether each tire is abnormal according to the information prompted by the instrument

12. Drive power limit indicator light (yellow)

The vehicle drive function is restricted and the indicator light will on.

Hill Descent indicator light (green) / Hill Descent fault indicator light / (red)\*

HDC is a cruise control function, which can help the driver go downhill at low speed (maximum 50% slope), which is controlled by ESP active pressurization without the driver's active intervention. When HDC is working, the green light is on; When HDC fails, the red light is on. This indicator light does not have self-checking function. If the hill descent fault indicator light is on, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

14. Airbag fault warning light \* (Red)

If the airbag fault light does not go out or lights up during driving, the combination instrument displays "airbag fault", indicating that there is a fault in the airbag system.

#### **MARNING**

If the fault light is on, the airbag system cannot be guaranteed to be in normal state. Under the condition of ensuring safety, contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Brake system fault indicator light (1) (red)

When the "START/STOP" button is in the "ON" mode, the brake system fault light "()" in the combination instrument lights up to perform the brake system self-inspection. After that, the brake system fault light goes out. If the brake system fault light does not go out or lights up during driving, it indicates that there is a fault in the brake system. At this time, it is necessary to check the brake fluid level. If the brake fluid level is normal, there are other faults in the brake system.

#### **↑** WARNING

If the fault light comes on during driving:

- Stop the vehicle immediately under safe conditions.
- Do not step on the brake pedal repeatedly, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.
- 16. Brake Energy Regeneration OFF Indicator Light ♀ (yellow)

The vehicle has the function of energy recovery. When the vehicle brakes in the energy recovery mode, the traction motor generates current and stores it in the power battery. When the light is on, it indicates that the brake energy regeneration function is turned off. When the vehicle power battery is fully charged, the system will automatically turn off the energy recovery function to protect the battery. When the ABS works, the energy recovery is withdrawn, and the indicator light "\$\overline{\text{Q}}\" on the on-board computer display does not light up.

17. Brake Energy Regeneration Level Indicator ① ② (Green)

In the energy recovery mode, this light will

light up to show the current braking energy recovery level. The braking energy recovery level is divided into three levels: 1-3. The higher the level, the stronger the energy recovery intensity.

18. Auto Park Indicator light (A) (green)/
Auto Park fault indicator light (A) (red)

The driver does not need to keep the brake pedal all the time in order to keep the vehicle still. AVH keeps the vehicle stationary through ESP pressure keeping. When the automatic parking function is turned on, the indicator light lights up in green; When the automatic parking function fails, the indicator light lights up in red. This indicator light does not have self-checking function. If the automatic parking fault indicator lights up, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately for inspection and repair.

19. Cruise control indicator light\*
(green/grey) The indicator lights up
when cruise control is on

Gray; when cruise control is active, the indicator lights green.

20 -right turn signal indicator light 

(green)

Indicates that the right turn signal light is on, and the indicator light flashes when the

right turn signal light or emergency warning light is turned on.

If the indicator light flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the right turn signal light is faulty or the bulb is damaged. Please check whether the turn signal is faulty, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

21. Front fog light indicator light() ₹ (yellow) (Reserved)

Indicates that the front fog light is on. It lights up when the front fog light of the headlight is on.

- 22. Rear fog light indicator light  $O^{\frac{1}{5}}$  (yellow) Indicates that the rear fog light is on. It lights up when the rear fog light of the headlight is on.
- 23. Door-opened indicator light (red)

This light lights up when any door, front engine room, trunk and charging port cover are opened.

24. Charging gun connection indicator light \_\_\_\_\_ (red)

When this light is on, it indicates that the charging gun is connected. At this time, it is strictly prohibited to move the vehicle.

# 25. ABS fault indicator ((yellow)

When the "start / stop button" is in the "ON" mode, the indicator light is on for about 3 seconds for self-test, and then goes out.

If the indicator light lights up during driving, it indicates that the ABS system is faulty

# **∱**WARNING

- If the indicator light is on during driving, under the condition of ensuring safety, you can drive to the destination at low speed, but you should contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If the brake fault indicator lights up simultaneously, stop immediately while ensuring safety, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.
- 26. High voltage OFF indicator light (yellow)

After the "start / stop button" is in the "ON" mode, if the high-voltage power system is not connected, the light will be on and the vehicle will not be able to drive; If the high-voltage system is connected, the light goes out.

# **↑** WARNING

If the light is on during driving, please pull over to the side to ensure safety, and immediately contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.

27. Charging alerting light/indicator light (yellow)

When the driving range is lower than the charging reminder range set by the user, the indicator lights up. At this time, the power battery should be charged as soon as possible. In addition, when the vehicle is in the charging state, if the indicator light is on, it indicates that the vehicle is charging.

28. Power battery failure alarm indication (red)

The warning light is on, indicating that the power battery is faulty.

# **∳** WARNING

If the warning light is on during driving, please pull over, as long as it's safe to do so, because the power battery may not supply power normally at this time, and you must contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

29. Parking system fault indicator light (P) (red)

When the electronic parking brake system fails, the indicator light lights up. The instrument cluster displays "electronic parking system fault".

#### **↑** WARNING

- If the indicator light is on, do not drive the vehicle. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.
- If the indicator light is on while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair while ensuring safety.
- 30. 12V battery fault indicator light (red) When there is a problem with the 12V battery or the DC-DC system, the 12V battery charging fault indicator light lights up. If the indicator light lights up, contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance as soon as possible.

#### **↑** WARNING

- If the indicator light is on while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair while ensuring safety.
- If no measures are taken, it will lead to serious driving performance problems.

Indicates that the high beam light is on. It lights up when the high beam light of the headlight is on.

- 32. Low beam indicator light  $\bigcirc$  (green) Indicates that the low beam light is on. It lights up when the low beam light of the headlight is on.
- 33. Electric parking system (EPB)fault indicator light **(P)** (red)

When the electronic parking brake switch is turned on, the indicator light lights up.

34. Position light indicator light [DC] (green) It indicates that the position light (or the main light switch) is on. It lights up when the position light (small light) is on.

# Multi-functional display (type II)

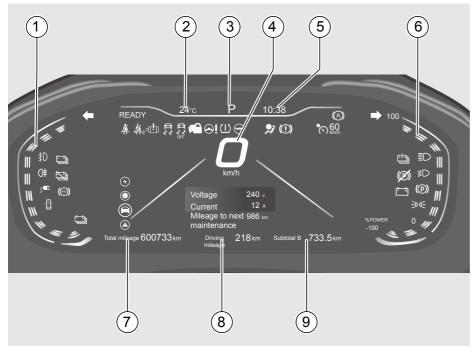


Figure (Topic I mode) - General view of combination instrument

- Electricity meter
- outdoor temperature
- Gear position display
- Digital speed
- Time display
- Wattmeter
- Total mileage
- Driving mileage
- Subtotal mileage

#### Wattmeter



Figure- Wattmeter

The wattmeter is used to indicate the instantaneous power percentage of the drive motor. If the indication is in the range of 0% ~ 100%, it indicates that the driving motor is outputting power. If the indication is in the green area, it indicates that the power battery enters the energy recovery state.

#### Digital speed

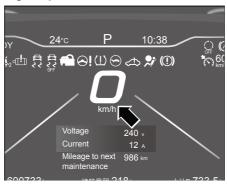


Figure- Digital speed

Digital speed: displays the driving speed of the current vehicle, in km / h.

#### Power battery electricity meter



Figure- Power battery electricity meter

The power battery electricity meter is used to indicate the remaining power of the power battery.

#### Total mileage



Figure- Total mileage

Total mileage: displays the total mileage of the vehicle since it was delivered from the factory, and the total mileage range 0km~99999km.

#### Sub-total mileage



Figure- Sub-total mileage

- Subtotal mileage A: the driving mileage in a certain section can be accumulated, and its mileage range is 0km ~ 9999.9km.
- Like subtotal mileage A, subtotal mileage B can accumulate mileage in a certain interval, and its mileage ranges from 0km to 9999.9 km.

In the subtotal mileage A/B interface, short press the "ENTER" button to switch between subtotal mileage A and subtotal mileage B, and long press the "ENTER" button to clear the corresponding subtotal mileage.

#### **Driving mileage**

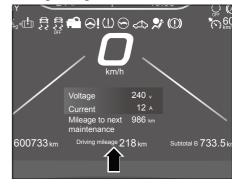


Figure- Driving mileage

Displays the mileage of the current power battery remaining power.

# i Hint

- The minimum display accuracy of the instrument is 1km.
- The cruising range will be affected by driving mode, weather, temperature, driving environment and other data.

#### **Temperature Display**

outdoor temperature.

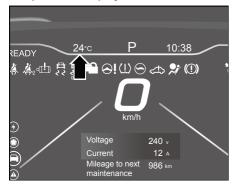


Figure- Temperature display
Temperature display: Displays the current

#### Time display

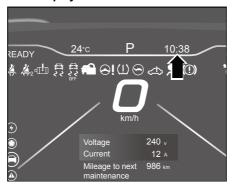


Figure- Time display
Time Display: Displays the current time.

#### Gear position display

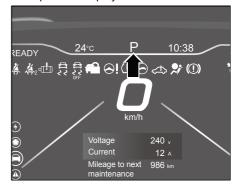


Figure- Gear position display

Gear display: Displays the current gear of the vehicle

#### Guide bar

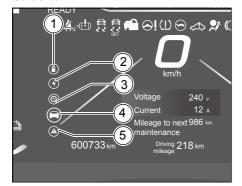


Figure- Guide bar

Operate the switch button on the left side of the steering wheel, and press the "↑" or "↓" button to switch, from top to bottom: ① Charging information, ② Power consumption interface, ③ Tire pressure interface, ④ Vehicle information, ⑤ Vehicle alarm information. The "MENU" button has a higher priority than the pop-up window, and pressing it will enter the menu. If the ignition is turned off and then ignited in this interface, it will return to the power consumption page by default.

#### **Charging Interface**

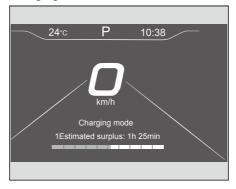


Figure- Charging Interface

When the vehicle is charged, the instrument displays the charging mode and charging information.

#### Power consumption interface

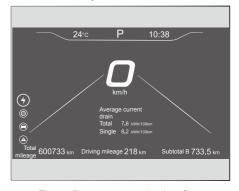


Figure- Power consumption interface

Average power consumption: refers to the power consumption calculated by on-board computer under comprehensive road conditions.

#### Tire pressure (TPMS) display

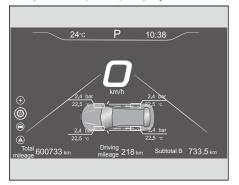


Figure- Tire pressure display

Indicates current vehicle tire pressure information.

#### Vehicle information interface

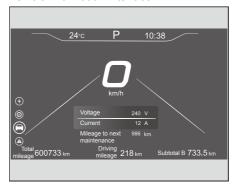


Figure- Vehicle information interface

Voltage: Indicates the current voltage value of the power battery.

Current: indicates the current value of charging and discharging the current power battery, and indicates the discharging current value during driving, and charging current value during braking energy recovery.

The maintenance mileage shows the mileage from the next vehicle maintenance.

Reset maintenance mileage can be reset by diagnostic instrument (0-10000km).

# Setup menu



Figure- setup menu

Short press the steering wheel "MENU" to enter the setup menu.

#### Maintenance mileage

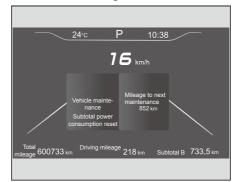


Figure -Vehicle maintenance

Short press the "ENTER button to enter the vehicle maintenance option, you can view the mileage until the next maintenance of the vehicle.

#### Subtotal power consumption reset

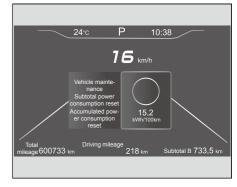


Figure -Subtotal power consumption reset

Used to show the average energy consumption in each ON-OFF cycle (unit: kWh/100km). After the button is powered on, the average power consumption display value is updated every 1 km, which is displayed by the instrument.

When the ignition switch is in the "ON" gear, the user can manually reset it through the menu option, see the menu setting content. When the meter receives a subtotal energy consumption value of 0, it means that zero clearing is completed.

#### Accumulated power consumption reset

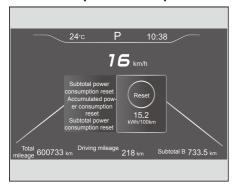


Figure -Accumulated power consumption reset

The cumulative historical average energy consumption of the complete vehicle is used to show the average energy consumption in the life cycle of the vehicle (unit: kWh/100km). After the vehicle leaves the factory, the average power consumption display value is updated every 1 km and displayed by the meter. The display range of acumulated power consumption is from 0.0 kWh/100km to 100.0 kWh/100km.

When the "Start/Stop button" is in "ON" mode, the user can manually clear it through menu options, see menu settings. When the accumulated energy consumption value received by the instrument is 0, it means that zero clearing is completed.

#### Charging mileage reminder

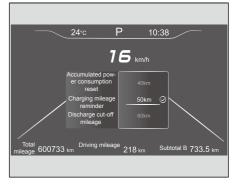


Figure- Charging mileage reminder

The charging reminder mileage can be set in the vehicle settings, and the charging reminder mileage can be set by dialing the up/down buttons. The range of the charging reminder mileage can be set to 30-100km.

#### Overspeed alarm value setting

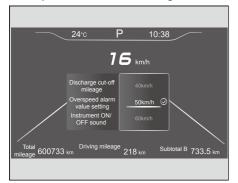


Figure- Overspeed alarm value setting

When the vehicle speed is 0, short press the "MENU" button to enter the menu options, and toggle "UP/DOWN" button to the vehicle speed reminder option.

After entering the speeding reminder setting interface, you can set the speed reminder. You can choose between "OFF", "60km/h"~"160km/h" by toggling the "Up/Down" button, press the "ENTER" button to confirm, and press the "MENU" button to restore the previous state.

The initial default overspeed reminder limit is 120 km/h, which will be restored if the user selects to restore the factory setting, otherwise the overspeed will be determined according to the last set value by the user. When the instrument sets the overspeed alarm OFF, the instrument no longer triggers the overspeed alarm function.

#### Instrument ON/OFF sound

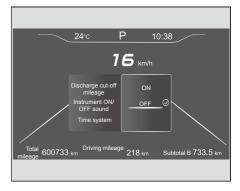


Figure -Instrument ON/OFF sound

You can set the instrument ON/OFF prompt tone to ON or OFF through menu buttons. Select ON or OFF by turning the "UP/DOWN button, and short press the "ENTER" button to confirm.

#### Time system

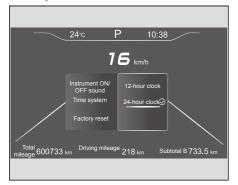


Figure - clock system

After entering the time system adjustment interface, you can select options by pressing the "UP/DOWN" button, and confirm the selected option by pressing the "ENTER" button.

#### Restore factory settings

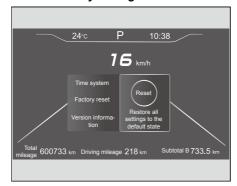


Figure -Restore factory settings

Press the menu button to enter the setting interface, and select to restore the factory setting interface by operating the UP/DOWN button. After pressing the "ENTER" button, you will be prompted to confirm and cancel the option, and then press the "ENTER" button again to restore the factory setting.



With the continuous improvement of product quality, the technical conditions of the combination instrument will be constantly updated, and the alarm and display status of the combination instrument of different batches of vehicles may be different. Therefore, the Company reserves the right to modify the product after printing the manual without notice.

# Steering wheel

#### Adjust steering wheel position



Figure - Correct position between driver and steering wheel

The driver can adjust the height of the steering wheel according to his body shape and driving habits:

 Adjust the driver's seat to the correct and comfortable position.



Figure - Adjust the steering wheel position

- Push the steering wheel locking handle downward until the steering wheel is unlocked.
- Move the steering wheel (UP or DOWN) to a comfortable position so that the steering wheel is facing the driver's chest and ensure that the driver can see all the gauges and indicator lights on the dashboard.
- Steady the steering wheel and push up the steering wheel locking handle to lock it.
- 5. Move the steering wheel and make sure it is firmly locked.

#### **↑** WARNING

- When the steering wheel is adjusted, improper and incorrect sitting posture will cause serious injuries to the driver.
- In order to avoid accidents, the vehicle must be in a stationary state when adjusting the steering wheel, and the steering wheel must not be adjusted when the vehicle is driving!
- When adjusting the driver's seat or steering wheel, it should be noted that the distance between the steering wheel and the chest should be at least 25cm. If it is less than 25cm, the airbag system will not provide effective protection. If you fail to maintain a minimum distance of 25cm from the steering wheel, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV, and relevant personnel will help you determine whether you need to make special modifications.
- The locking handle must be pressed firmly to prevent the position of the steering wheel from changing during vehicle driving.

#### **↑** WARNING

Do not direct the steering wheel towards your face, otherwise the driver's frontal airbag will not provide effective protection in case of accident. The steering wheel should be facing the driver's chest

#### Horn switch



Figure - Multi-function steering wheel right button Press the horn on the steering wheel to mark the area near the horn, the horn will sound, and it will stop when you release it.

# Left button of multi-function steering wheel (applicable to self-adaptive cruise)\*

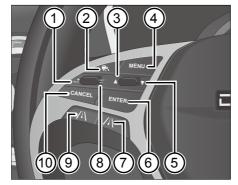


Figure - Left button of multi-function steering wheel

- RES/+: Increase or restore the set speed button
- 2. Adaptive cruise master switch
- 3. UP button
- 4. Menu button
- 5. Down button
- OK button
- 7. Distance reduction button
- 8. SET/-: decrease or set speed button
- 9. raise distance button.
- 10. Release the set speed button

# Left button of multi-function steering wheel (suitable for constant speed cruise vehicles) \*

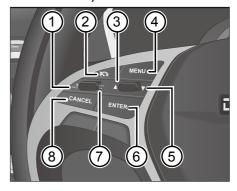


Figure - Left button of multi-function steering wheel

- RES/+: Increase or restore the set speed button
- 2. Cruise control master switch
- 3. UP button
- 4. Menu button
- 5. Down button
- 6. OK button
- 7. SET/-: decrease or set speed button
  - . Release the set speed button

# Right button of multi-function steering wheel

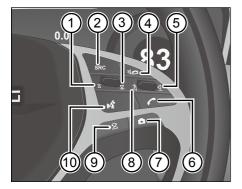


Figure - Multi-function steering wheel right button

#### 1. Previous track

When the music is playing: short press to play the previous song, press and hold the button to rewind;

When playing on the radio: short press to play the previous one;

When playing video: short press to play the previous video, press and hold the button to quickly retreat;

#### 2. SRC mode switching:

Short press to switch between radio, USB music and Bluetooth music.

#### Next track

When the music is playing: short press to play the next song, press and hold the button to rewind;

When playing on the radio: short press to play the next one;

When playing video: short press to play the next video, press and hold the button to fast forward;

# 4. Hang up / mute:

During the call: hang up the phone
Other situations: Turn the sound on or off

#### Volume reduction:

To decrease volume, short press to decrease one level, press and hold to decrease volume continuously.

#### 6. Answer the phone:

After the Bluetooth connection, when there is an incoming call, short press to answer the call.

If your Bluetooth is not connected to the car, a short press will open the Bluetooth phone interface.

#### 7. One-button photo

Short press the "one-button photo" button the DVR will take pictures.

Long press the "one-button photo" button, the DVR will record the video.

#### 8. Volume +:

To raise volume, short press to raise one level, press and hold to raise volume continuously.

#### 9. I-Call

Short press to dial I-Call, press to hang up I-Call during a call.

#### 10. Voice recognition

Short press to turn on voice recognition

# Start and stop the vehicle

# Smart remote key\*

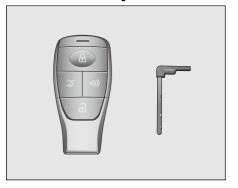


Figure-Smart remote key

The intelligent remote control button contains a mechanical key, and the mechanical key is used in an emergency. If the smart remote key does not work, the mechanical key can be used to open the door.

Smart remote key: It can lock or unlock all doors and open the trunk by using wireless remote control function and keyless entry and start system function.

#### Smart remote key\*



Figure-Smart remote key

The intelligent remote control button contains a mechanical key, and the mechanical key is used in an emergency. If the smart remote key does not work, the mechanical key can be used to open the door.

When taking the aircraft with the smart remote key, make sure not to press any button on the smart remote key in the cabin. Pressing the button may cause the smart remote key to emit radio waves, which may interfere with the flight of the aircraft.

#### Make keys

The new car is delivered with a barcode on the key. If you need to prepare the key, please bring the key and barcode to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

If the barcode is lost, please inform the vehicle VIN code to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. The authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV is familiar with the next actions and can provide you with consultation service.

#### Note

When using the remote key with the transceiver chip, please follow the following instructions:

- Do not attach any objects (such as metal seals) that will interfere with electromagnetic waves to the remote key.
- Don't knock other objects with the remote key.
- Do not expose the remote key to high temperature for a long time, such as on the dashboard or front engine room cover in direct sunlight.
- Do not immerse the remote key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic scrubber.
- Do not put the remote key with a device that emits electromagnetic waves, such as a mobile phone.
- Don't disassemble the key by yourself.
- If the vehicle key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible to prepare the key for the safety of your property.

#### Start with low key power

When the key has no power or the power is too low to start normally, the emergency start function can be used. Put the key close to the emergency start area (in the cup holder with emergency start mark and press the start-stop switch to start the vehicle.

# **Mechanical key**

The intelligent remote control button contains a mechanical key, and the mechanical key is used in an emergency. If the smart remote key runs out of power or fails due to other faults, the mechanical key can be taken out as follows, and then the door can be opened.

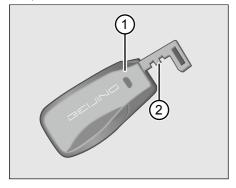


Figure-Remove the mechanical key

- 1. Press and hold the lock button ①, and the mechanical key ② pops up.
- 2. Pull out the mechanical key 2.

# i Hint

After using the mechanical key, please put it back.

#### Wireless Remote Control\*

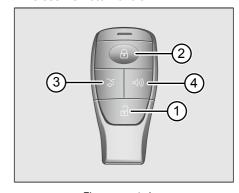


Figure-remote key

The remote key has four buttons, which are:

- Unlock button: unlock the door lock of the complete vehicle;
- 2. Lock button: lock the vehicle door lock:
- 3. Trunk unlock button: Unlock the trunk
- Car search button: Press this key in the fortified state, and the vehicle will give sound and light alarm to help users find the location of the vehicle.

#### Wireless Remote Control\*

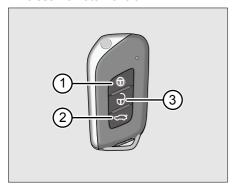


Figure-remote key

The remote key has three buttons, which are:

- Locking button: lock the door lock of the complete vehicle
- Trunk unlock button: Unlock the trunk
- Unlock button: unlock the door lock of the complete vehicle;

#### Note

After pressing the unlock/lock continuously, the door lock protection function will be triggered, and the unlock function will be temporarily disabled.

For details about the key, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. If the key does not operate the doors or does not operate within the normal distance:

- Check for radio transmitters nearby that interfere with the normal operation of the key and the surrounding environment, such as radio stations or airports.
- Battery power might have run off.
   Check the battery inside the key.

For safety reasons, please start the remote control function when approaching the door. If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible to avoid vehicle theft.

#### Locking door



Figure-Locking door

With all doors and trunk lids closed, press the lock button, all doors are locked, and all turn signal lights are lit for about 2 seconds.

# i Hint

Check and confirm that all doors are securely locked.

The following lists some situations in which the lock button is pressed when the door is not closed properly:

- When any door (4 doors) is not closed, press the lock button, the door will not be locked, and the exterior rearview mirror will not be folded (if this function is available).
- When the four doors are closed and the front engine room cover or trunk cover is not closed, press the lock button to give sound and light reminder (horn sounds 3 times and turn signal flashes 3 times), and then enter the alarm state. At this time, press the unlock button to release the alarm.

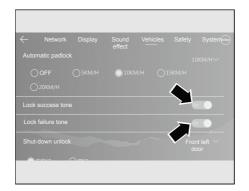


Figure-Vehicle lock tone ON and OFF

The opening and closing functions of the prompt tone for successful or failed vehicle locking can be set in the settings of the central control display screen.

#### Anti-theft indicator light

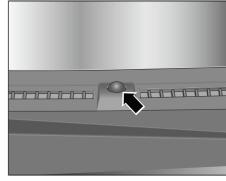


Figure-Anti-theft indicator light

The vehicle anti-theft indicator light is located in the front center of the dashboard. After the vehicle is successfully fortified, this indicator light flashes, and after the vehicle is successfully unlocked, this indicator light stops flashing.

#### Unlock the door



Figure-Unlock the door

With all doors locked, press the unlock button to unlock all four doors while the turn signal flashes twice.

After using the wireless remote control unlocking function, please open any door within about 30s, otherwise all doors will automatically lock again.

# Open the trunk

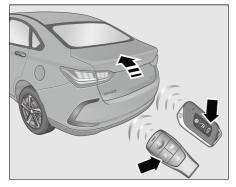


Figure-Open the trunk

Press the trunk unlock button on the key for a long time to unlock the trunk lid.

#### Car search function\*

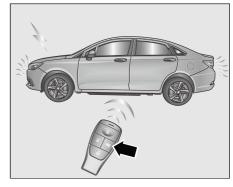


Figure-Car search function

When the vehicle is in a fortified state, within a distance of less than 30m (open field), press the car search button on the smart remote key, and the turn signal will flash twice, the anti-theft horn will sound twice, and the four doors will not be unlocked.

#### Mechanical key unlocking and locking \*

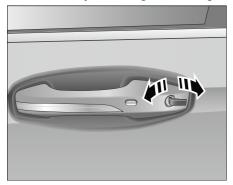


Figure-Insertion of mechanical key into keyhole

- Insert the key into the mechanical lock on the driver's door and turn the key clockwise to the LOCK position. Then, All doors lock.
- Insert the mechanical key into the mechanical lock on the driver's door and turn the key counterclockwise to the UNLOCK position. Then, the all door unlocks.

#### Replace the battery

When the power of the smart remote key is insufficient, the trip computer will remind to replace the battery. Improper operation when replacing the battery will damage the key. It is recommended to replace it at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

If you replace it by yourself, you need to use CR2032 lithium battery.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Please do not touch the remote control circuit board, otherwise static electricity may be generated, thus damaging the remote key.
- Don't lose any parts when replacing the battery of the key.
- CR2032 lithium battery is required.
- Waste batteries must be disposed of according to local laws.

#### **!** WARNING

- Make sure the battery is inserted in right positive and negative directions.
- Do not replace the battery with wet hands to avoid the battery from being rusted.
- Do not touch or move any parts in the key, otherwise it will affect the function of the key.
- Do not bend the electrodes when removing the key chip, and do not stick dust or oil in the battery box.
- Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation.
- When installing, ensure that the battery lock cover is meshed well to avoid dust and water vapor entering
- After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the remote key is normal. If the remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

# Method for replacing remote key battery

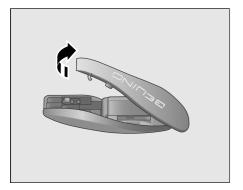


Figure-pry up the back cover of smart key

- Remove the mechanical key;
- pry up the back cover of the smart key with tools;

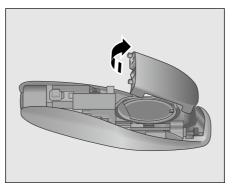


Figure-Open the battery cover

3. Open the battery box cover

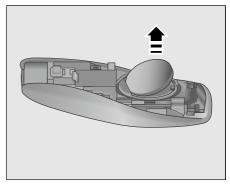


Figure-Remove the battery.

- 4. Remove the battery and avoid touching the circuit board and battery clamp;
- Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
- Ensure that the battery cover is well engaged during installing to avoid the intrusion of dust and water vapor;
- After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart remote key is normal. If the smart remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJFV

# Method for replacing remote key battery

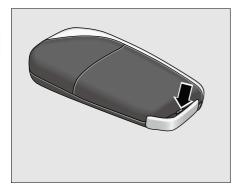


Figure-pry up the back cover of smart key

 pry up the back cover of the smart key with tools:

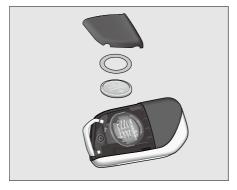


Figure-Remove the battery.

- Remove the battery and avoid touching the circuit board and battery clamp;
- Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
- Ensure that the battery cover is well engaged during installing to avoid the intrusion of dust and water vapor;
- After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart remote key is normal. If the smart remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

#### Keyless entry and start system \*

The remote key mainly has the following functions:

- · Keyless unlocking/locking;
- Keyless (key) start;
- Power distribution;
- Power anti-theft function;
- Indoor low frequency antenna certification;
- Remote control car search function
- Key low voltage reminder.



Figure-Keyless Unlock

#### Keyless Unlock:

With the vehicle locked, carrying a valid smart remote key to press the button on the handle by hand within about 1m of the front door handle of the vehicle, and the vehicle will unlock automatically.



Figure- Keyless Locking

# Keyless Lockin

When the vehicle is unlocked, carry the smart remote key. Within about 1m of the front door handle of the vehicle, the "start/ stop button" is placed in the "ACC" or "OFF" mode, all doors and trunk doors are closed, and then press the buttons on the front door handle by hand, and the complete is locked and entered the fortified state.

# Key reminder function smart key forgotten in the car

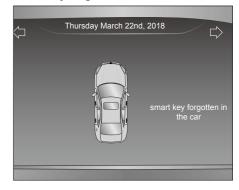


Figure-smart key forgotten in the car;

With the power mode "OFF", the door opened to closed, the door handle touched to lock the car, the instrument will display "smart key left in the car" accompanied with an alarm tone when detecting that there is a legal smart key in the car.

# The smart key is not in the car

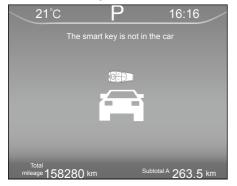


Figure- The smart key is not in the car

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, if any door is closed from opening to four doors, and it is detected that there is no key in the car, the trip computer display screen will display "the smart key is not in the car" and have an alarm tone.

#### No smart key found



Figure- No smart key found

When the "Start/Stop Button" is in the "OFF" mode, if there is no smart key in the car and the user presses the "Start/Stop Button", the trip computer display screen will display "Please put the key close to the emergency start area".

#### Anti theft alarm system

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced electronic anti-theft alarm system and in order to ensure maximum safety and convenience, we strongly recommend you to fully understand its characteristics and usage by carefully reading the contents of this chapter.

#### Note

When the vehicle exits the anti-theft alarm state, the vehicle is unlocked, but if the door is not opened within about 30 seconds, the vehicle anti-theft alarm will automatically return to the anti-theft alarm state and the vehicle will be locked again.



Figure- Anti theft alarm system

When the lock and unlock buttons of the remote key are pressed, the remote key sends an encoded radio signal to the receiver in the vehicle:

- Press the lock button to activate the alarm system
- Press the unlock button to turn off the alarm system

The activation and shutdown of the vehicle alarm system can also be realized by using the passive entry and exit function:

 Press the button on outside the door handle to activate / deactivate the alarm system After locking the vehicle with the remote key, the anti-theft alarm indicator on the instrument starts to flash, the vehicle enters the fortified state, and all doors are monitored. If a door is found to be opened illegally, the alarm will be activated.

The vehicle anti-theft alarm function can be activated only when all doors and trunk are locked. If the turn signal flashes three times after locking the vehicle with the remote key, it indicates that the vehicle has not entered the anti-theft alarm state. At this time, you should check whether the door and trunk have been closed properly. If yes, and still can not activate the anti-theft alarm function, please visit the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection to avoid the loss of property in the vehicle due to the anti-theft alarm failure.

Trigger conditions of alarm status:

- f all doors are closed and the front engine compartment lid or trunk lid is not closed when locking the door with the remote key, the vehicle will enter the alarm prompt.
- If any door other than the driver's door (including the front engine hood and trunk lid) is opened after locking the door with the remote key, the vehicle will enter the alarm prompt.
- If the door is locked with the remote key, unlocked with the mechanical key, and the driver's door is opened, but the vehicle is not started within 15 seconds, the vehicle enters the alarm prompt.

Triggered condition of alarm status:

In the fortified state, any abnormal condition of the monitored input end will make the fail-safe system enter the alarm triggered state, and immediately activate the relevant audible and visual alarm devices to give an alarm for a cycle of 30 seconds. In the process of alarming, real-time detection of whether the alarm condition is released, if it has been released, the alarm is cancelled.

Release method after triggering anti-theft alarm state:

- Press the unlock button on the remote key to release the anti-theft alarm state, stop the light and sound signals, and unlock the vehicle.
- Press the "start/stop button", when the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" block, the anti-theft alarm state can also be released.

# Central door locking system

# Description of the central door locking system

The central door locking system can lock and unlock all doors. The specific methods are as follows:

- Operate the central door lock system with the remote transmitter.
- Operate the central locking system with the central locking button.

#### Central locking button

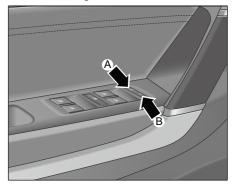


Figure-Driver's side door: central door lock control button

The central door lock control button locks and unlocks all doors in the car.

#### Unlock the door:

Press the central door lock unlock control button A to unlock all doors.

#### Lock the door:

By pressing the central door lock control button B, all doors are locked and the doors cannot be opened from the outside.

After being locked by the central door lock button, the door can still be opened independently from inside the car. Pull the door outside handle to unlock the door once, and pull the door outside handle again to open the door. When either side of the door is open, the door locking operation cannot be carried out through the central door lock button.

# **∱** WARNING

Do not leave children or people with mobility difficulties alone in the car! Once the central door lock system is locked, all doors will be locked immediately. And thus it is difficult for children or people who can barely walk to leave the vehicle by themselves in case of an emergency, and the locked doors will also raise the difficulty of rescue in case of an accident.

#### Auto-lock function

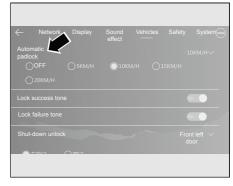


Figure - Auto lock function setting interface

During the starting process of the vehicle, when the vehicle speed reaches 20km/h (the speed value can be set through the setting item of the central control display), the door will be automatically locked.

#### Auto-unlock function

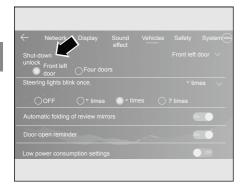


Figure - Auto-unlock function setting interface In case of collision during driving, all door locks will be unlocked automatically.

When the vehicle is running, press the "start / stop button". When the "start / stop button" is in the "OFF position, the door will unlock automatically (the unlocking quantity can be set in the setting option of the central control display).

#### Anti-misoperation lock function

The door lock has the function of anti-misoperation and lockout, that is, when any door is open, the locking function of the door lock cannot be realized by using the button, remote control or central control button, so as to prevent the door from being locked with the key left in the vehicle.

# Thermal protection function of door lock motor

The door lock motor is thermally protected if the door lock motor is driven to lock and unlock the door seven times in a row (each time less than 1.2 seconds apart). The door lock motor will not act no matter what kind of door lock action signal is input within 20 seconds. And after that, the drive control function of the door lock motor will return to normal.

### Note

Do not play with the key of the remote control and the central control button to repeatedly lock and unlock the door to prevent the door lock motor from entering the thermal protection mode.

#### 2. Unlock the driver side door lock



Figure-pull the driver side door handle to open the door

Each door has an inside handle.

When the central locking system is unlocked, the door can be opened from inside the vehicle by this handle.

With the central door lock system locked, to open the driver door from inside by using the handle, just pull the handle once to unlock the door, and then pull it again to open the door.

#### 2. Unlock front passenger side door lock

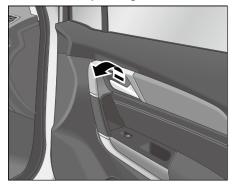


Figure-pull the front passenger side door handle to open the door

Each door has an inside handle.

When the central locking system is unlocked, the door can be opened from inside the vehicle by this handle.

With the central door lock system locked, to open the driver door from inside by using the handle, just pull the handle once to unlock the door, and then pull it again to open the door.

# Reminder that four doors and two covers are not closed



Figure-Reminder that four doors and two covers are not closed

If the doors, front hood and trunk lid are not closed properly, the combination instrument will show that the corresponding doors are not closed.

### Child safety lock

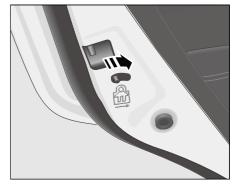


Figure-Child safety lock

When there are children in the rear seat, you must turn the child lock to the locked state. Turn the child safety lock lever obliquely to the right, and the child safety lock is locked; Turn the child safety lock lever obliquely to the left to unlock the child safety lock

#### i Hint

- In order to prevent children in the car from accidentally opening the rear door and causing accidents, it is recommended to lock the child safety lock when there are children in the car.
- Doors locked by child safety locks can only be opened from the outside even if the doors are unlocked.
- Both rear doors have child safety locks.

#### Note

 When the child safety locks are locked, the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.
 When the rear door cannot be opened with the outside handle, the child safety lock may play a role. Do not pull the outside handle hard to avoid damage.

#### Trunk lid

Precaution of trunk lid

#### **↑** WARNING

- When the vehicle is driving, the trunk should always be closed. If the trunk is opened, it may hit nearby objects during driving or the luggage in it may be thrown out accidentally, resulting in an accident.
- It is strictly forbidden to carry passengers in the trunk, otherwise the passengers will be seriously injured or even killed in case of emergency braking or collision.
- Do not allow children to enter the trunk, if they are accidentally locked in the trunk, they may cause discomfort or even suffocation due to overheating
- Do not allow children to open or close the trunk, doing so may cause accidental damage to the trunk or cause their hands, head or neck to be jammed by the closing trunk.

#### Unlock the trunk with the remote key

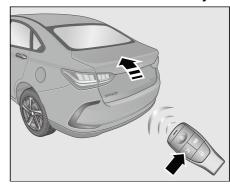


Figure-Unlock the trunk with the remote key
Press and hold the trunk lid unlock button
on the remote key to unlock the trunk lid.

# Use the trunk unlock button to open the rear trunk

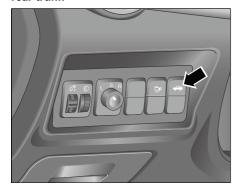


Figure-Open button for rear trunk lid

Short press the trunk lid unlock button on
the multi-function switch in the car to unlock
the trunk lid.

### **Emergency opening of trunk lid**

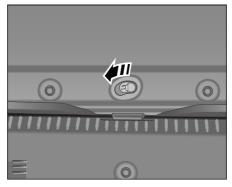


Figure-Rear trunk lid emergency opening switch

- Fold the rear seats forward into the trunk
- 2. Turn the trunk emergency opening switch to unlock the trunk, and push the trunk lid outward to open it.

#### **↑** WARNING

When using the trunk, the following precautions shall be observed, otherwise the body parts may be clamped and cause serious injury:

- When opening the trunk lid upward, the trunk lid will pop up to the fully open position. Pay attention to the top safety.
- Before opening the trunk lid, remove the foreign matters (such as snow or ice) on the trunk lid to prevent pinch injury.
- When there are too many items in the trunk and it is impossible to confirm whether the items will touch the trunk lid, you may hold the trunk lid first and try to close it slowly. After confirming that it is possible, close the trunk lid.

#### Close the trunk

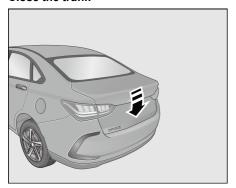


Figure -Close the trunk

Lower the trunk close to the rear bumper cover in the direction of - arrow - and then close the rear trunk with both hands.

#### **↑** WARNING

When closing the trunk, you should be very careful not to clip your fingers and other parts.

### **Electrical window**

Driver side electrical window control switch

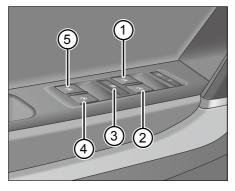


Figure- Partial view of the driver's door: for operating the electrical window switch

The electrical window control switch is located on the driver's side door armrest.

- 1 Driver's window lifter switch
- 2 Front passenger's window lifter switch
- 3 Passenger's window lifting disable switch
- 4 Rear-row right window lifter switch
- 5 Front-row right window lifter switch

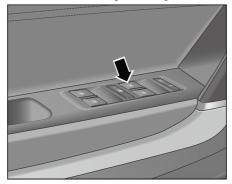
The electrical window can be operated within 30 seconds when the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" and "ACC" gear, or when the "Start/Stop button" is pressed in "OFF" gear.

All windows are equipped with a "one-button" lowering function, that is, press the switch briefly and release it, and the windows will continue to open until they are fully opened. During the lowering process, the opening can be stopped by pulling the switch backward.

# **⚠ WARNING**

- You should be careful when closing the window glass to avoid being pinched by the window glass.
- Some vehicles are equipped with a electrical window regulator with an anti-pinch function for the driver's one-button window, but the passenger and rear door windows do not have an anti-pinch function.
- Some vehicles are equipped with a electrical window regulator with an anti-pinch function for the fourdoor one-button window, but the passenger and rear door windows do not have an anti-pinch function.
- Make sure children stay away from the windows when raising or lowering them.
- Do not leave any child in the vehicle alone.

Driver's side window glass lifting control:



Driver's door window regulator switch

Figure- partial view of driver's door: driver's window lifter switch Lift the button up, and the left front door window glass will rise until the switch is released, or the glass will stop when it rises to the top.

If the driver door has the function of onetouch closing, you may pull up the button in a short time (pull the button gently and release it quickly), and the left front door window will move upward automatically until the window glass reaches to the top. If you touch the button during moving, the window glass will stop at the current position and hold. Press down the button, and the left front door window glass will drop until the switch is released or the glass drops to the bottom. If you press the button in a short time (press the button gently and release it quickly), the right front door window will move downward automatically until the window glass reaches to the bottom. If you touch the button during moving, the window glass will stop at the current position and hold.

Front passenger's window lifter switch

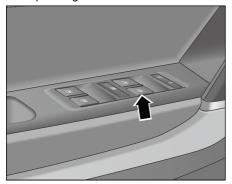


Figure- Partial view of the driver's door: front passenger's window lifter switch

Lift the button up and hold it. Close the window glass of the right front door. When the window reaches the desired position, release the switch.

Press and hold the button down to open the window glass of the right front door. When the window reaches the desired position, release the switch.

If you press the button in a short time (press the button gently and release it quickly), the right front door window will move downward automatically until the window glass reaches to the bottom. If you touch the button during moving, the window glass will stop at the current position and hold.

If the vehicle is equipped with four-door window one-button window lift and anti-pinch function, you can pull up the button for a short time (lift the button and then release it quickly), and the window glass will automatically rise until the window glass rises to the top. When the window glass is automatically raised, touch the button and the window glass will remain in the current position.

Rear-row left window glass lift control:

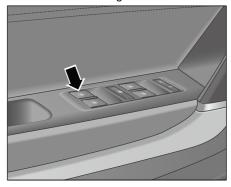


Figure - Partial view of driver's door: rear-row window left lifter switch

Lift the button up and hold it to close the left rear door window glass, and when the window reaches the desired position, release the switch.

Press and hold the button down to open the left rear door window glass, and when the window reaches the desired position, release the switch.

If you press the button in a short time (press the button gently and release it quickly), the left rear door window will move downward automatically until the window glass reaches to the bottom. If you touch the button during moving, the window glass will stop at the current position and hold.

Rear-row right side window glass lift control

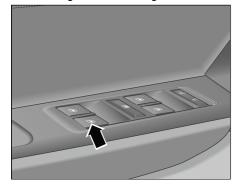


Figure - Partial view of driver's door: rear-row right window lifter switch

Lift the button up and hold it to close the right rear door window glass, and when the window reaches the desired position, release the switch.

Press and hold the button down to open the right rear door window glass, and when the window reaches the desired position, release the switch. If you press the button in a short time (press the button gently and release it quickly), the right rear door window will move downward automatically until the window glass reaches to the bottom. If you touch the button during moving, the window glass will stop at the current position and hold.

#### Window glass anti-pinching function

Equipped with the electric window lifter with anti-pinch function, when the window glass is moved difficultly or hindered in the process of closure, the window glass will stop going up and reopen.

When the window is about to close completely, the automatic backward (anti-pinch function) will stop sensing. Before closing the window, check that the passenger's hands and objects have been removed from the window.

Non-driver side window lifter disable switch

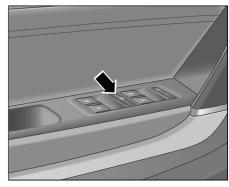


Figure- Partial view of the driver's door: Non-driver side window lifter disable switch

In the state where the window lifter disable switch is not activated, the front passenger and rear-row passenger windows can be controlled by an independent window switch installed on each door. With the window lifter disable switch activated, the window lift of each door can be controlled only by the driver's window lifter switch.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Even when you leave the vehicle only temporarily, don't leave the child alone in the vehicle. The window disable switch works during driving and when the power is turned on.
- You should be careful when closing the window glass to avoid being pinched by the window glass.
- It is suggested to activate the window disable switch when there are child passengers in the car to prevent children from having accidents.

# Passenger's electric window control switch

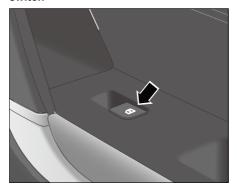


Figure- partial view of passenger side door: Passenger's electrical window lifter switch

The front passenger and rear passenger side power window regulator switches are located on doors and are used in the same way as that of the driver side window.

# Window glass initialization and self-learning \*

The automatic lifting function of the window glass will fail after the battery is accidentally powered off during moving. For the doors with jam protection function, the function shall be restored by performing the following operations:

- The "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode:
- Lower the window glass to the bottom, continue to press down the switch button and hold it for 3 seconds or more:
- Pull the button upward and keep the window glass moving upward, which cannot be interrupted. After moving to the fully closed position, continue to pull the button for 3 seconds or longer.

#### Power sunroof

#### Power sunroof switch

When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode, the sunroof can be opened or closed through the electric sunroof switch.

By operating the sunroof button, the skylight can be opened, closed and tilted for ventilation.

# **⚠ WARNING**

When closing the trunk, you should be very careful not to clip your fingers and other parts.

In order to ensure driving safety, sunroof operation is prohibited during driving.

#### Electric sunroof sliding open and close

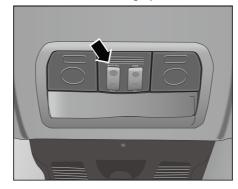


Figure-Electric sunroof open

The "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode:

- Press and hold the sunroof switch, and the sunroof glass starts to run from the closed position to the sliding open position, during which, once the switch is released, the sunroof glass will stop running.
- Press and quickly release the switch, the sunroof glass starts to run automatically from the closed position to the fully open position, during which, once the switch is pressed, the sunroof glass will stop running.



Figure- electric sunroof close

The "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode:

Press and hold the sunroof switch, and the sunroof glass starts to run from the sliding open position to the sliding closed position, during which, once the switch is released, the sunroof glass will stop running.

Press and quickly release the switch, the sunroof glass starts to slide automatically from the closed position to the fully open position, during which, once the switch is pressed, the sunroof glass will stop running.

#### Anti-pinch function of sunroof

Close the sunroof by touching the button. At this time, the sunroof has anti-pinch function.

The purpose of the anti-pinch feature is to prevent the sunroof from running into any obstacle when it is closing. If the sunroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing, it will stop and then return back a bit.

When the skylight is closed, if the anti-pinch feature is activated, the sunroof will move toward the direction of opening to the desired position and stop.

#### Note

The anti-pinch feature of the sunroof cannot prevent fingers from being clamped.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Be sure to close the sunroof with extra care. To avoid serious injury, make sure passengers are clear of the sunroof before opening and closing it.
- The driver must close the sunroof when leaving the vehicle.
- Do not operate the sunroof in low air temperature (below - 20°C). Under the cold condition, the anti-pinch function may not be activated to cause accident and the motor will be damaged due to low temperature.
- The anti-pinch feature stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to cancel this function.
- Do not attempt to activate the anti-pinch feature by hand or your body part. Doing so can cause serious injury easily.
- In order to ensure driving safety, the driver is not allowed to operate the sunroof switch during vehicle driving.

#### Raised ventilation ON and OFF



Figure- Raised ventilation ON

The "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode:

- Press and hold the sunroof switch, and the sunroof glass starts to run from the closed position to the raised open position, during which, once the switch is released, the sunroof glass will stop running.
- Pull and quickly release the switch, the sunroof glass starts to run automatically from the closed position to the tilted open position, during which, once any switch is pressed, the sunroof glass will stop running.

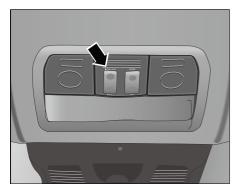


Figure- Raised ventilation OFF

The "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode:

Press and hold the sunroof switch, and the sunroof glass starts to run from the raised open position to the closed position, during which, once the switch is released, the sunroof glass will stop running.

Press and quickly release the switch, the sunroof glass starts to slide automatically from the closed position to the fully open position, during which, once the switch is pressed, the sunroof glass will stop running.

#### Note

When sliding the sunroof closed and tilting the sunroof closed:

- Continuously press the sunroof switch, and the sunroof glass does not have anti-pinch function during closing.
- Short press and quickly release the switch, and the sunroof glass has anti-pinch function during closing.

#### Voice control \*

Some models can control the sunroof sliding and tilting ventilation by voice, which is subject to the actual vehicle configuration.

#### **Sunroof sunvisor**



Figure-sunroof sunvisor

The sunroof sunvisor can be opened together with the sunroof. When it needs to be closed, just manually pull the sunroof sunvisor back to its original position.

#### Note

When the sunroof opens, do not force to close the sunvisor of sunroof.

# Manual initialization and self-study of sunroof

In some cases (such as sudden power failure of the battery or use after long-term parking), it may be necessary to initialize the sunroof manually. The specific operations are as follows:

- 1. Press the sunroof switch continuously to open the sunroof in any direction.
- Press and hold the switch, the sunroof glass will run to the hard stop in the tilting direction and stop after falling for a short distance.
- 3. Release the switch and the sunroof glass initialization is completed.
- Press the switch continuously again, and the sunroof will start to move to the fully sliding open position, and the sunroof will continue to move to the fully closed position and stop.
- Release the switch, the sunroof does not move, and the sunroof glass completes the study.

# Car lights and visual field

# Light combination switch

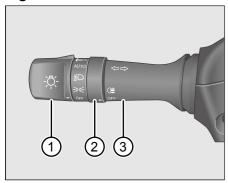


Figure-Lighting combination switch

- 1. Lighting control knob
- 2. Fog light control knob
- 3. Lighting control lever

# **Lighting control**

# **Position light**

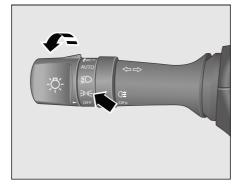


Figure-Lighting combination switch

Turn the light control knob so that the mark on the light control knob is aligned with the 'DG' position, the front and rear position lights, rear license plate lights, button backlight and position light indicators on the combination instrument will be on, and turn back to the off position to turn it off.

### Headlight

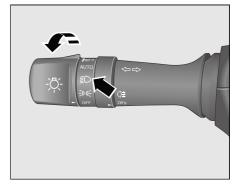


Figure-Lighting combination switch

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, turn the light control knob so that the mark ▶ on the light control knob is aligned with the ⑤ position, and the headlight will light up, and turn back to the OFF position to turn off.

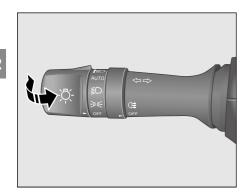


Figure-Lighting combination switch

With the low beam light on, push the light control lever away from you to turn on the high beam, and pull the light control lever towards you again to turn off the high beam.

#### The headlights are automatically lit.

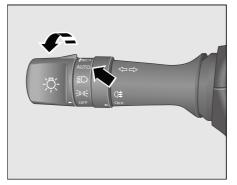


Figure-Lighting combination switch

When the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode and the light control knob is in the "AUTO" position, the low beam lamp will automatically light up when the light outside the vehicle is dark (such as night or driving through the tunnel).

# High-beam and lower-beam light warning

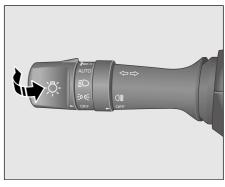


Figure- toggle the light control lever to turn on the high and low beam light switching / overtaking

When the light switch is OFF, position light or low beam light, pull the light handle towards the steering wheel to flash the headlamp, and the high beam will turn on-off, that is, flash once.

When the light switch is in the low beam light and the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, push the light handle in the opposite direction of the steering wheel to switch from low beam to high beam, and the blue indicator On the combination instrument lights up. Lift the light handle towards the steering wheel to turn off the high beam light.

### i Hint

When operating the high beam headlights while driving, please be careful not to dazzle the driver of the oncoming vehicle and affect the driving.

### Turn signal light

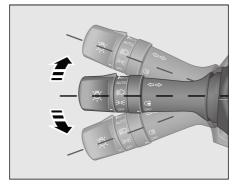


Figure- Toggle the light control lever to turn on the turn signal lights

When the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, toggle the light control lever downward to turn on the left steering light, and the indicator light of ⟨□ in the combination instrument flashes; Toggle the light control lever upward to turn on the right Turn signal light, and the indicator light of □ in the combination instrument flashes simultaneously.

When the steering wheel is aligned, the light control lever will return automatically, and the external turn signal light and the turn signal indicator light in the combination instrument will go out.

Toggle the light handle half gear up or down to indicate the lane change state, and the turn signal indicator light of the combination instrument flashes. After the hand is released, the handle will automatically return to its position, and the external right or left turn signal light will flash three times (the flashing times of turn signal light can be set in the central control display screen) and then go out.

#### Fog light control

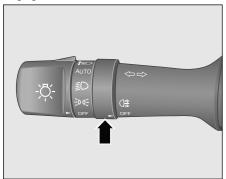


Figure- Fog light control knob

#### Note

It is only necessary to turn on the fog lights in rainy, foggy, ice and snow weather or in poor visibility weather.

# i Hint

In weather with good visibility, turning on fog lights may cause dizziness to other road users.

#### Manual adjustment of headlight height

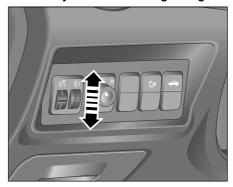


Figure- Manual adjustment knob of headlight height

The angle of the low beam depends on the weight distribution of occupants and luggage inside the vehicle. It is important to level the headlight to ensure adequate lighting in front of the vehicle without causing dizziness to other road users.

By rotating the knob under  $\[ \bigcirc \]$ , confirm the appropriate irradiation position of headights. There are four gears: 0, 1, 2 and 3. The irradiation height of gear 0 is the highest, and it decreases in turn according to gear 0-3.

Position '0'

Only for drivers, or drivers and front passengers (without luggage).

Position '1'

All seats are full.

Position '2'

With one driver, and the load is evenly distributed in the trunk (up to the allowable axle load of the rear axle and not exceeding the maximum allowable payload).

Position '3'

All seats are fully occupied, and the load of the trunk is evenly distributed (reaching the allowable axle load of the rear axle and not exceeding the maximum allowable loading mass).

# i Hint

These load conditions are applicable when the total load does not exceed the maximum axle and vehicle bearing weight.

### Backlight brightness adjustment

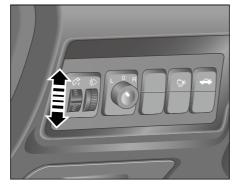


Figure-Backlight brightness adjustment knob

The backlight brightness adjustment knob (\*\*) is located on the multi-function switch panel on the lower left side of the dashboard.

When the position light is on, the backlight of each button of the instrument and the complete vehicle is on. Toggle the backlight brightness level button upwards, and the backlight brightness of the instrument backlight and each button of the complete raises; Toggle the backlight adjustment button down, and the backlight brightness of the instrument backlight and each button of the complete will decrease.

The backlight brightness is 10 levels in total. When the backlight is adjusted, the current backlight brightness level will be displayed on the combination instrument.

Position lights on and off have two backlight states, which can be divided into daytime and nighttime modes, and can be memorized independently.

### Atmosphere light\*

The indoor atmosphere lamp is located above the armrest of the four door panels and on both sides of the front of the auxiliary fascia console. When the "start / stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, operate the virtual button of the central control display screen to turn on or off the atmosphere light.

For specific usage, please refer to the manual of the central control display.

# Hazard warning light switch

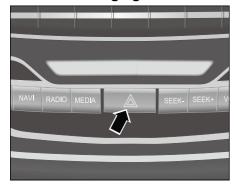


Figure-Hazard warning light switch

The hazard warning light switch is located on the multimedia control panel.

In the event of emergency, using the hazard warning lights can cause other road users' attention to avoid leading to traffic accidents. Turn on the hazard warning lights in one of the following conditions:

- Your vehicle breaks down due to a technical fault.
- At the end of traffic flow during traffic jam.
- · In emergency.
- Towing another vehicle or being towed.

When the hazard warning light is turned on, all turn signal lights will blink simultaneously, and the two turn signal indicator lights in the combination instrument will blink. Hazard warning lights work even when the "Start/Stop" button is in the "OFF" position.

To turn off the hazard warning lights, press the hazard warning light switch again.

#### Note

- Prolonged use of the hazard warning light will drain battery power, even if the Start/Stop button is in "OFF" mode.
- When using hazard warning lights, please strictly abide by relevant traffic laws and regulations.
- If the hazard warning lights fail, to cause other road users' attention, be sure to take other measures which comply with the relevant traffic laws and regulations.

#### Clearance lamp not off alarm

When the "start / stop button" is in the "off" mode, the light switch is in the position of clearance lamp or low beam lamp and the vehicle position lamp is on. At this time, when the driver's door is opened, the instrument will send an alarm that the clearance lamp is not off.

#### **Emergency brake signal**

When the vehicle speed exceeds 50km / h and emergency braking occurs, the brake light will flash;

With the vehicle speed exceeding 70km/h, emergency braking applied and continued until the vehicle speed drops below 10km/h, the brake light flashes and the hazard warning light automatically turns on; After that, if the vehicle is brake released and accelerated to a speed more than 20km/h and maintained for more than 5 seconds, the hazard warning light will turn off automatically; Also, the hazard warning light can be turned off manually by operating its switch.

# "Follow Me Home" function\*

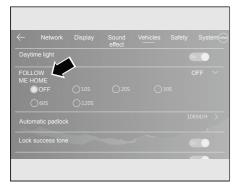


Figure - time setting for the "Follow Me Home" function

With the "START/STOP" button in the "OFF" mode, pull the light control lever towards the steering wheel to turn on the "Follow Me Home" function, and the low beam light will turn on and turn off automatically after a delay of 10s (the delay time can be set in the settings on the center console display). This function can provide lighting for the driver to stop and return home at night.

# Interior lighting

Front reading light (sunroof switch assembly)\*

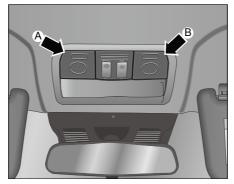


Figure - Indoor reading light

Press the driver's side reading light A, the driver's side reading light will turn on; after 10 minutes of lighting or press again within this time, the reading light will turn off.

Press the reading light B on the front passenger side, and the reading light on the front passenger side will turn on; after 10 minutes of lighting, or press the reading light again within this time, the reading light will turn off.

### Door open light function

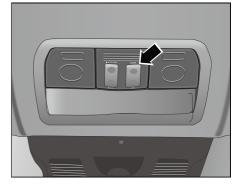


Figure - Indoor reading light

Press the switch "DOOR" to turn on the door light function. The front reading light will light up when front door is opened. The lighting will continue for about 3 seconds and then fade out after all doors are closed. The interior lighting has a power-saving mode and will turn off automatically after lighting for about 10 minutes at most.

# Front reading light (without sunroof switch) \*

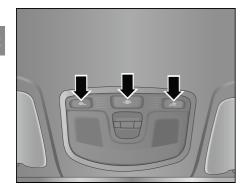


Figure - Indoor reading light

Press switch , the driver's side reading light is on; after 10 minutes of lighting or press again within this time, the reading light is off.

Press the switch , the reading light on the front passenger side will turn on; after 10 minutes of lighting or press again within this time, the reading light will turn off.

#### Door open light function

Press the switch ( ), the door will turn on the light function

When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode, open any door and the front reading light will light up.

After the doors are closed, the front reading lamp will gradually turn off. If any door is not closed, the front reading lamp will remain on for about 30 seconds and then turn off.

When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode Unlock, any door and the front reading light will light up.

After the doors are locked, the front reading lamp will gradually turn off. If any door is not locked, the front reading lamp will remain on for about 30 seconds and then turn off.

# **Trunk lights**

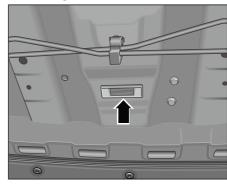


Figure - Trunk lights

When the trunk is opened, the trunk lamp will turn on automatically. After the trunk is closed, the lamp will turn off automatically.

#### Note

When the vehicle is not started, do not turn on the interior lamp for a long time to avoid battery power loss.

# Windshield wiper

Wiper combination switch (with rain sensing)\*

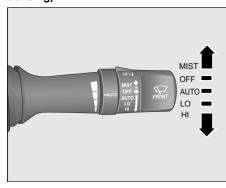


Figure - operating position of windshield wiper control lever

MIST: Single wipe

2. OFF: Turn off the windshield wipers

3. AUTO (automatic wiper)

LO: wipe at low speed HI: wipe at high speed

When the "Start/Stop Button" is in "RUN" mode, the wash/wiper can work normally. If the start/stop button is not in the "RUN" mode during the wiper action, the wiper will stop immediately and return to the initial position when it is in the "RUN" mode next time.

To choose the shift, pull up or pull down the controller.

- MIST: When the wiper control lever is moved to the "MIST" position, the wiper blade will run at a low speed once. Turn the wiper lever to the "MIST" position and hold it. The front wiper continues to wipe until you release your hand.
- 2. OFF: The wiper does not work.
- AUTO: the front wiper is automatic when the wiper control lever is turned to "AUTO" position. When the rain sensor detects rain, the front wiper will operate according to the detected rainfall size and frequency.
- LO: when the wiper control lever is turned to "LO", the front wiper blade will perform slow wiping action at a certain frequency.

 Hi: when the wiper control lever is turned to the "Hi" position, the wiper will perform rapid wiping action at a certain frequency.

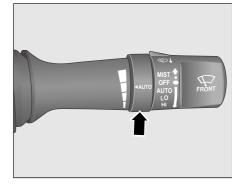


Figure - automatic wiper speed adjustment knob When it is in the AUTO position, the wiping speed can be adjusted by rotating the automatic wiping speed regulating knob.

#### Note

When automatic washing machine, do not place the wiper lever in the "AUTO" position, and turn off the system when not using the wiper.

#### Rain sensor

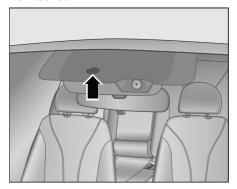


Figure -rain sensor

The rain sensor is located on the windshield near the rearview mirror. If the sensor is covered by mud, oil, dust, etc., the wiper may not work normally.

# Wiper combination switch (without rainfall sensing) \*

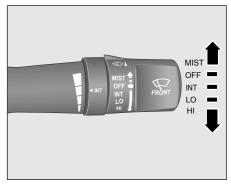


Figure - operating position of windshield wiper control lever

- 1. MIST: Single wipe
- 2. OFF: Turn off the windshield wipers
- 3. INT (intermittent wiper)

LO: wipe at low speed

HI: wipe at high speed

When the "Start/Stop Button" is in "RUN" mode, the wash/wiper can work normally. If the start/stop button is not in the "RUN" mode during the wiper action, the wiper will stop immediately and return to the initial position when it is in the "RUN" mode next time.

To choose the shift, pull up or pull down the controller.

- MIST: When the wiper control lever is moved to the "MIST" position, the wiper blade will run at a low speed once. Turn the wiper lever to the "MIST" position and hold it. The front wiper continues to wipe until you release your hand.
- 2. OFF: The wiper does not work.
- INT: When the wiper control lever is set to the "INT" position, the front wiper blade will be in a gap operation state.
- LO: when the wiper control lever is turned to "LO", the front wiper blade will perform slow wiping action at a certain frequency.

 Hi: when the wiper control lever is turned to the "Hi" position, the wiper will perform rapid wiping action at a certain frequency.

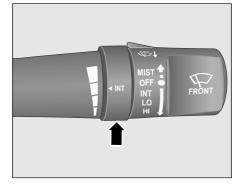


Figure-Intermittent time adjustment knob When it is in INT position, the speed of wiping can be adjusted by rotating the intermittent time adjustment knob.

#### Note

- Do not use the wiper on the dry windshield.
- In low temperature and hot conditions, ensure that the wiper is not frozen or fixed to the windscreen when operating.
- In winter, snow and ice should be removed from the wiper arms and wipers, including areas where wipers operate.

#### Windscreen cleaning

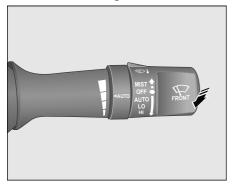


Figure-Turn on windshield cleaning function

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, toggle the windshield wiper control lever in the direction of the steering wheel, spray water from the front windshield washing nozzle, stop spraying water when released, and automatically stop after the front wiper continues to scrape for several times.

Pull the wiper lever in the direction of the steering wheel and hold it, and the washer will continue to spray water for up to 12 seconds, and then stop automatically.

### Interior rearview mirror

# Manualanti-glare in-vehicle rearview mirror

Before driving, adjust the inside rearview mirror to obtain the best view angle, and also keep it clean.



Figure- Adjust the position of manual anti-glare in-vehicle rearview mirror

Toggle the lever on the rearview mirror back and forth. The inside rearview mirror can be adjusted to reduce the driver's dizziness caused by the rear vehicle lights.



- In order to ensure driving safety, when adjusting the rearview mirror, the Angle of view "blind zone" should be reduced as far as possible.
- In some cases, the view displayed in the rearview mirror may interfere with the driver's ability to accurately position the vehicle behind him. Please pay special attention!
- The position of all rearview mirror should be adjusted before driving.

  Do not adjust the rearview mirror when driving.

### **Exterior rearview mirror**

The exterior rearview mirror has the functions of electric adjustment, electric heating \* and electric folding \*.

#### **↑** WARNING

- The object image reflected by the exterior rearview mirror is smaller than the real situation. The actual distance between the object and the vehicle will be closer than it looks. Don't misestimate the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle behind you, otherwise it may cause accidents.
- The position of rearview mirror should be adjusted before driving.
   Do not adjust the rearview mirror when driving.

# Electric adjustment of outside rearview mirror lens



Figure- Exterior Mirror Lens Adjustment Knob

The exterior rearview mirror adjustment knob is located on the multi-function switch at the lower left of the dashboard.

Select the exterior rearview mirror to be adjusted, and rotate the adjustment knob to L (left exterior rearview mirror) or R (right exterior rearview mirror).

Operate the adjustment knob up or down to adjust the up or down angle of the exterior rearview mirror; Operate the adjustment knob to the left or right to adjust the left or right rotation angle of the exterior rearview mirror.

# Automatic folding of exterior rearview mirror

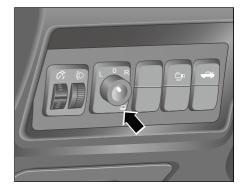


Figure -Automatic folding button of exterior rearview mirror

Turn the adjustment knob to position, and the exterior rear-view mirrors on both sides will fold to the inside of the vehicle simultaneously.

As long as the adjustment knob is turned out from the position, the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides will automatically expand simultaneously.

After all doors, front engine compartment lid and trunk lid are closed, press the locking button of the remote key, and the exterior rearview mirror will fold automatically. Press the unlocking button of the remote key, and the exterior rearview mirror will expand automatically. If "Auto rearview mirror folding" is selected as off in vehicle Settings of central control display, folding/unfolding of auto rearview mirror cannot be realized by the key

### i Hint

If the outside rearview mirror frame is shifted due to external force, it must be fully folded under power mode. Do not manually adjust the rearview mirror frame, otherwise the rearview mirror adjustment function will be affected.

# Manual folding of exterior rearview mirror\*

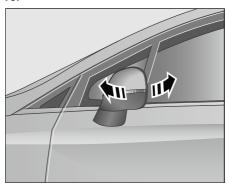


Figure- Manual folding of exterior rearview mirror For models with manually folded exterior rear-view mirrors, pull the exterior rear-view mirror backward by hand to fold the exterior rear-view mirror on the side of the vehicle.

#### / WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with any exterior rearview mirror folded, which will reduce the judgment accuracy of vehicles and obstacles behind and may lead to accidents!

### Exterior rearview mirror heating\*

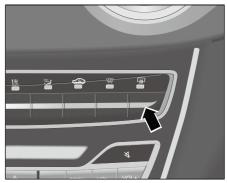


Figure- Defrost / defog button on the A/C panel

Press the defrost/defogger button on the air conditioning panel to turn on the heater to remove the fog and frost on the exterior rearview mirrors and rear windshield. After about 15 minutes, the system automatically turns off the heating, defrosting and defogging functions of the exterior rearview mirrors and rear windshield.

If the heating function needs to be turned off in advance during the heating period, press the rear windshield defrost/defogger button again.

# i Hint

- Within 15 minutes after pressing the heating button, if you want to turn off the heating, defrosting and defogging function of the rearview mirror and rear windshield, just press the button again.
- After pressing the heating button for 15 minutes, if the heating is still demanded, press the button again.
- If there is no longer necessary to defog the outside mirrors, turn off the heater to avoid consuming the battery.

# Sunvisor



Figure- Driver's Sunvisor: Open and Flip Lower the sunvisor to position to block the light from the front. Put down the sun visor, take out the right side of the sun visor from the clip, and then rotate it to the side to block the light from the side.

#### **↑** WARNING

When the vehicle is driving, don't turn over the sun visor to the side, so as not to cause danger.

# Makeup mirror

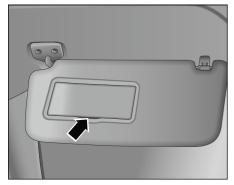


Figure- Driver side makeup mirror

There are makeup mirrors installed on both sides of the sunvisor, which can be seen when the sunvisor is turned down. When not in use, to prevent the seat from being damaged by sunlight reflection, please return the sunvisor to its original position.

### **↑** WARNING

Drivers should not use makeup mirrors while driving the vehicle. When the vehicle is running, the front passengers should not use makeup mirrors to avoid injury during emergency braking or collision.

# Seats and storage facilities

# Significance of Correct Seat Adjustment

To get the most protection from the seat belts and airbags, adjust the seats properly.

Driver's seat or front passenger's seat can be adjusted according to the shape of passengers.

Before driving, observe the following requirements to adjust the front seat properly to make sure:

- You can maintain full control of the vehicle in an accurate, effective and safe manner.
- You sit in a correct posture, providing relaxation and indefatigability.
- You can get the most protection from the seat belt and airbags.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Any passenger should sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Make sure the child is restrained in the child restraint system properly.
- All passengers must adjust their seats correctly according to their own body shape and wear seat belts correctly, so as to give full play to the protective role of seat belts.
- When driving, always place your feet within the footwell well. Do not let your feet rest on the dashboard, stretch out the window or curl over the seat. Otherwise, the driver may easily get injured when braking sharply or an accident occurs. If the airbags are triggered simultaneously, the incorrect sitting posture can cause serious injury or even death to the driver and front passenger.
- The seat can only be adjusted when the vehicle stops. If the seat is adjusted during driving, it will cause accidents easily.

### **↑** WARNING

- For the driver and front passenger, keep a minimum distance of 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard. If the spacing is too small, the airbag system will not give full play to its protective role, but may seriously injure passengers!
- For manual seats, after adjusting the seat position, try sliding the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked in place.
- Push the upper part of the seat back back and forth to ensure that the seat back is firmly locked, otherwise it may interfere with the normal operation of the seat belt.
- Do not place objects under the manually adjustable seats, which may interfere with the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push the seat position lever upwards causing sudden seat movement, which are especially likely to result in loss of vehicle control while driving.

#### Driver's seat manual adjustment\*



Fgiure-Manually adjust the driver's seat forward and backward

### Adjusting the seat forward or backward

- Pull up the adjusting lever under the front of the driver's seat, and move the seat back and forth to the appropriate position simultaneously.
- Release the adjusting pull rod and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.

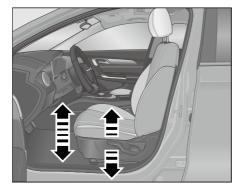


Figure - Manual adjustment of the driver's seat up and down

#### Adjustment of seat up and down

- Pull the adjustment handle upward to raise the seat cushion;
- Pull the adjustment handle upward to lower the seat cushion;

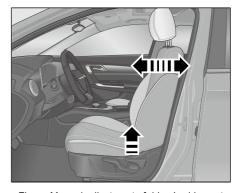


Figure-Manual adjustment of driver's side seat backrest

#### Adjusting the seatback angle

- Pull the release adjusting handle upwards and apply an appropriate amount of force to the seat backrest to adjust it forward and backward to the right angle.
- Release the adjusting handle and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.

#### Electric adjustment of driver's seat \*

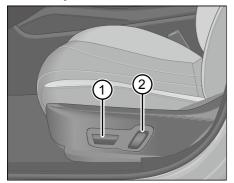


Figure-electric adjustment switch of driver's seat The seat can be electrically adjusted in six directions by the switches - 1 - and - 2 -.

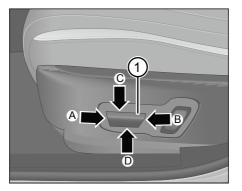


Figure -Electric adjustment of forward\backward\upward\downward of driver's seat

You can adjust the seat in the direction you want by pulling the switch-1-according to the direction indicated by the arrow

Direction -A- indicates seat backward adjustment;

Direction -B- indicates seat forward adjustment;

Direction -C- indicates seat upward adjustment:

Direction -D- indicates seat downward adjustment;

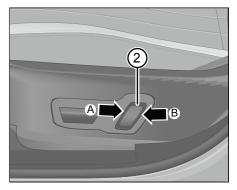


Figure- electric adjustment of driver side seat backrest

You can adjust the seat in the direction you want by pulling the switch-2-according to the direction indicated by the arrow

Direction - A - seat backrest tilts backward.

Direction - B - seat backrest tilts forward.

#### Electric adjustment of driver's seat \*

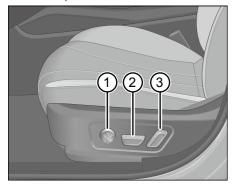


Figure-electric adjustment switch of driver's seat The seat can be electrically adjusted in six directions by the switch-1-.

The seat can be electrically adjusted in six directions by the switches - 2 - and - 3 -.

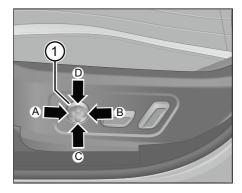


Figure- Electric adjustment of driver side seat lumbar support

You can adjust the seat lumbar support in the direction you want by pulling the switch-1-according to the position indicated by the arrow

Position - A - the upper air bag and the lower air bag are inflated simultaneously;

Position - A - the upper air bag and the lower air bag are deflated simultaneously;

Position-C-lower air bag inflation;

Position-D-lower air bag inflation;

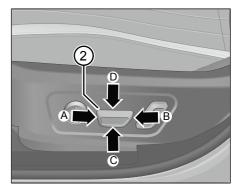


Figure -Electric adjustment of forward\back-ward\upward\downward of driver's seat

You can adjust the seat in the direction you want by pulling the switch-2-according to the direction indicated by the arrow

Direction -A- indicates seat backward adjustment;

Direction -B- indicates seat forward adjustment;

Direction -C- indicates seat upward adjustment:

Direction -D- indicates seat downward adjustment;

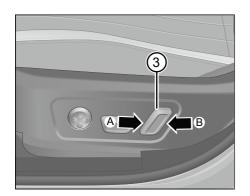


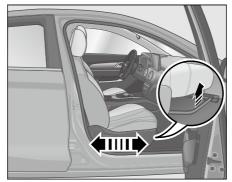
Figure- electric adjustment of driver side seat backrest

You can adjust the seat in the direction you want by pulling the switch-3-according to the direction indicated by the arrow

Direction - A - seat backrest tilts backward.

Direction - B - seat backrest tilts forward.

### Manual adjustment of passenger seat



Fgiure-Manual adjustment of driver's seat forward and backward

Adjusting the seat forward or backward

- Pull up the adjusting lever under the front of the passenger seat, and move the seat back and forth to the appropriate position simultaneously.
- Release the adjusting pull rod and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.

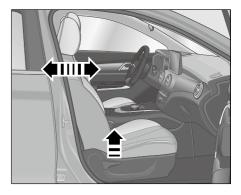


Figure-Manual adjustment of passenger's side seat backrest

#### Adjusting the seatback angle

- Pull the release adjusting handle upwards and apply an appropriate amount of force to the seat backrest to adjust it forward and backward to the right angle.
- Release the adjusting handle and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.

### i Hint

- When adjusting the seat back angle when the seat is not occupied, grasp the seat back with one hand.
- Seat setting: the seat is adjustable;
   The seat at the end of the forward and backward travels are used as the positions set for the vehicle with the backrest angle of 23 °.
- The driver's seat should ideally be positioned with the arms slightly bent to grasp the steering wheel and the seat back should be positioned as straight as possible.
- Do not tilt the passenger's seat too backward. When the seat back is at an angle of about 23 degrees to the vertical direction, the seat belt can play its maximum function

#### Rear-row seat folding

When large items need to be placed in the car, the rear-row seat backrests can be folded to raise the trunk storage space.

Preparation for folding:

Adjust the front seat forward to the proper position; lower the rear-row seat head restraint to the lowest position; move the seat belts on both sides of the rear-row seat to the outer side.

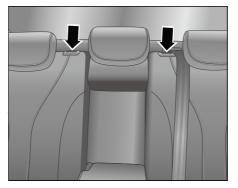


Figure-rear-row seat folding

Press the locking buttons on both sides of the rear-row middle seat head restraint and then turn the backrest forward simultaneously to realize the folding of the rear-row seat.

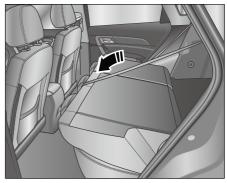


Figure-folding button of rear-row seat
After the rear seats are folded, the storage space in the vehicle can be maximized.



Figure-Rear seat folding return position

- Move the seat belt to the outside first, then push the seatback back into place. 1. Shake the seat backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is reliably locked.
- Confirm whether the locking button returns to the position parallel to the housing. If you can see the red warning sign in the groove of the housing, it means that the locking button is not locked; If the red warning sign in the groove of the housing cannot be seen, the locking button is locked successfully.

## Seat head restraint adjustment



Figure - front seat head restraint adjustment

In order to ensure safety and comfort, please adjust the head restraint to a position suitable for you before driving the vehicle.

Move up: grasp both sides of the head restraint, lift the head restraint vertically and move it to the required position.

Move down: first press and hold the locking button, then move the head restraint vertically downward, move it to the required position, and then release the locking button.

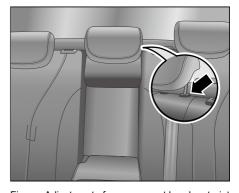


Figure -Adjustment of rear row seat head restraint In order to ensure safety and comfort, please adjust the head restraint to a position suitable for you before driving the vehicle.

Move up: grasp both sides of the head restraint, lift the head restraint vertically and move it to the required position.

Move down: first press and hold the locking button, then move the head restraint vertically downward, move it to the required position, and then release the locking button.

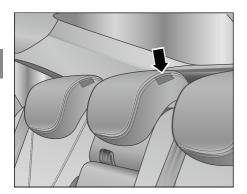


Figure-label for correctly adjusting of head restraint

In order to ensure safety and comfort, please adjust the head restraint to the appropriate position before driving the vehicle. The adjustment position can refer to the head restraint adjustment label.

## i Hint

If the head restraint needs to be removed, press and hold the locking button and take out the head restraintcompletely.

## **↑** WARNING

- During driving, do not remove the head restraint, otherwise, in the event of an accident, it will cause serious injury to personnel.
- After the installation of head restraint, you must adjust the head restraint according to your shape to obtain optimal protection.
- In order to ensure a good view of the rearview mirror in the car, the rear-row head restraint can be adjusted to the lowest position at ordinary times. When there are people in the rear seat, the head-rest must be adjusted upwards to a suitable position.

## Seat heating\*

The driver's seat of the vehicle is equipped with heating function. This operation can be carried out when the start / stop button is in "RUN" mode.

The seat heating button is located on the left side of the shift knob panel.

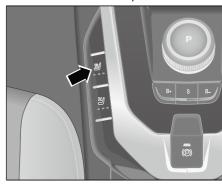


Figure-Seat heating button

The seat heating function has three modes in total. Press the driver seat heating button once, the HIGH mode starts, and the three indicators light up simultaneously; Press this button again, the MIDDLE mode starts, and two indicators light up simultaneously; Press the button for the third time, the LOW mode starts, and one indicator light lights

up; Press this button for the fourth time, the heating function turns off, and all the indicator lights go out (seat ventilation/heating cannot work simultaneously).

## **⚠ WARNING**

If your sensitiveness to pain and temperature lowers, never use seat heating function, to avoid your back, hips and legs being burnt by the heater.

#### Seat ventilation

The driver's seat of the vehicle is equipped with heating function. This operation can be carried out when the start / stop button is in "RUN" mode.

The seat heating button is located on the left side of the shift knob panel.



Figure-Seat ventilation button location

The seat ventilation function has three modes in total. Press the driver seat ventilation button once, the HIGH mode starts, and the three indicators light up simultaneously; Press this button again, the MIDDLE mode starts, and two indicators light up simultaneously; Press the button for the third time, the LOW mode starts, and one

indicator light lights up; Press this button for the fourth time, the heating function turns off, and all the indicator lights go out (seat ventilation/heating cannot work simultaneously).

## Note

To avoid damage of electrical parts inside the front seat, never knee on the seat or exert force to some point of seat cushion or backrest.

## Storage facilities

## **MARNING**

- Do not put flammable and explosive items in the car. Such as gas lighters, gasoline, alcohol, beer.
   Especially in hot summer, the temperature inside the car is very high, which will cause the sealed container to explode or cause a fire.
- There is relative movement between metal parts in many positions in the vehicle. Do not accidentally leave dangerous goods such as gas lighters in the seat slide, front engine room and other positions. Once the dangerous goods are crushed and broken, it may cause explosion or even fire accidents, causing serious damage to life or property.
- Do not use lighters for lighting in storage areas.

## Storage slot in driver's door trim panel

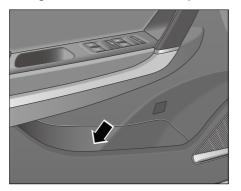


Figure - Storage slot in driver's door trim panel
The storage compartment of the interior
trim panel of the driver's door is equipped
with a cup holder, which can be used to
store maps, water cups and other items.

#### Note

The location of the storage slots on all door trim panels is basically the same.

- Never put chocolates or drugs and other heat sensitive goods on storage compartment on front and rear door inner trims.
- Please use sealed beverage containers, Otherwise, the risk of injury may be raised in a sudden acceleration, braking, cornering or crash.
- Do not use the cup holder while driving.

## Driver side storage box



Figure- Driver side storage box

The storage box on the driver's side is located at the lower left side of the dashboard and can be used to store small items such as cards and headphones.

## Side glove box

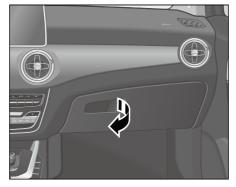


Figure-Open the glove box

Pull the handle to open the glove box. Close the glove box by pushing up the glove box cover until the clamping sound is heard.

#### Note

- Only containers with covers can be stored in glove boxes. Because the spilled liquid from the container without cover will damage the decorations and electrical parts in the glove box and instrument panel.
- The glove box should be closed when driving, otherwise the articles in the glove box may fly out and easily hurt the passengers during emergency braking or accident.

## Storage box in central armrest

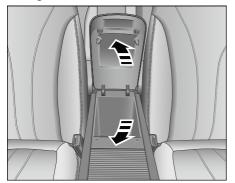


Figure - Opening the storage box in the center armrest

Lift up to open the storage box cover of the front central armrest; Press down to close the storage box cover of front-row center armrest.



Figure -vehicle top glasses case

The glasses case on the top of the vehicle is used to store the glasses of drivers and passengers.

Press the glasses case when it is closed to automatically eject the glasses case. Push up the glasses case until you hear the click sound, which means that the glasses case can be closed.

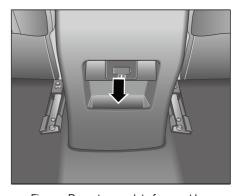


Figure - Rear storage slot of armrest box

There is a storage slot at the back of the armrest box, which can place small items

such as mobile phones.

## Central console cup holder

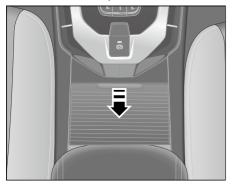


Figure-Open cup holder cover plate of center console

The center console cup holder is located behind the shift knob. Pull back to open the cover plate center console cup holder, and the center console cup holder can be seen.

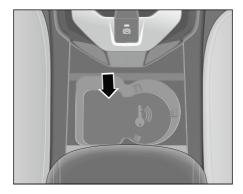


Figure-cup holder of center console

The cup holder of the central console can store drinks, water cups and other items.

# Cup holder of central console (with cup holder)

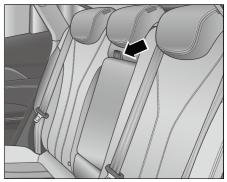


Figure-open rear-row seat center armrest
Pull the seat center handrest hook beltto
open the rear-row seat central armrest.

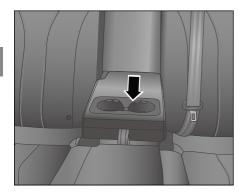


Figure- Rear-row seat center armrest (with holder)

The center armrest of the rear seat is equipped with a cup holder, which can be used to place teacups, drinks, etc.

When turning back the center armrest, push it into the back of the rear-row seat.

#### Note

- Do not use cup holders during driving.
- No splashing objects shall be placed in the cup holder. Otherwise, the risk of injury may be raised in a sudden acceleration, braking, cornering or crash.
- Hot drinks should not be placed in cup holders. During normal driving, emergency braking, or accidents, hot drinks will spill out and cause the danger of scalding!
- Please use a sealed beverage container, otherwise the drink in the cup may overflow when braking, causing damage to the vehicle!

#### **USB** interface



There are two USB interfaces in the front row. Press to open the USB interface cover to see the USB interface.

#### Front USB interface

Type I\*



Figure-USB interface cover plate

There are two USB interfaces in the front row, the left USB only supports mobile phone charging function, and the right USB supports multimedia playback and mobile phone charging.

Type II\*

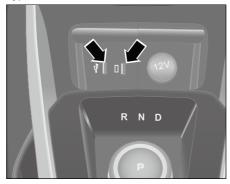


Figure-USB interface cover plate

Both of the two USB interfaces in the front row support multimedia player and mobile phone charging, and the USB interface with mobile phone logo can also be used for carlife-mobile phone interconnection.

## USB interface at rear of central armrest box

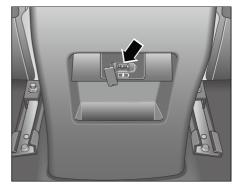


Figure - USB interface at rear of central armrest box

USB interface located at the back of the central armrest box, which only supports USB charging function, but does not support multimedia playback.

## 12V power socket



Figure-12V power outlet at dashboard

The 12V power socket is located at the front of the shift knob. Press to open the cover plate to see the 12V power socket, which can connect with electrical equipment. When not in use, be sure to close the socket cover.

## **↑** WARNING

- The power interface is dangerous, so don't leave children alone in the car without looking after them.
- You must be careful when using the power interface! Improper use of power interface may cause fire!
- Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle may damage the vehicle or cause other parts to work abnormally. The resulting repairs are not covered by the warranty.

## Air conditioner system-(electric air conditioner)

## **General Introduction**

The A/C filters can remove the pollen and dust brought-in by the heating and air-conditioning from the outside. Therefore, in order to have a good air environment in the car, the air filter of air conditioner must be replaced during regular maintenance.

If your vehicle is frequently driven in areas with poor air quality, the replacement cycle of the air conditioner filter shall be shortened. If the airflow from the air outlet is not as smooth as usual, replace the air conditioner air filter as soon as possible.

## **⚠ WARNING**

- Blurred windows easily raise the risk of accidents and casualties. For the sake of safety, all the windows must be free of ice, snow and fog to ensure clear vision.
- Turbid air in the vehicle will cause the driver to be fatigued, depressed and distracted, resulting in accidents and casualties
- The expertise and special tools are essential to the diagnosis and repair of air conditioning systems. Therefore, when the air conditioning system fails, please be sure to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair

## i Hint

- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, moisture in the air will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system, resulting in water droplets dripping from the evaporator which form water under the vehicle. This is normal, and there is no need to fear.
- The air inlet in the front of the windshield should be unblocked, and make sure it is not clogged by snow, ice and leaves. Make sure the heating and cooling are normal. Prevent the front windshield from fogging up.
- The windows must be closed for the air conditioning system to play a maximum effect. If the vehicle has been exposed to the burning sun and it is very hot in the vehicle, you should briefly open the windows to dissipate the heat and accelerate cooling.

## Air conditioner control panel



Figure-Function button of A/C control panel

- 1. Temperature adjustment knob
- 2. A/C Button
- 3. Heating button (heat button)
- 4. Air volume adjusting knob
- 5. Air conditioning closed button
- Defrosting/defogging button of front windshield
- Defrosting/defogging button of rear windshield
- Mode switch button
- Internal/external circulation switch button
- 10. economic mode button

1. Temperature adjustment knob

The knob can adjust the air outlet temperature, turn the knob clockwise to raise the temperature, and turn the knob counterclockwise to lower the temperature.

2. "A/C" Button

Press this button to turn on the cooling mode of the air conditioner.

3. Heating button (heat button)

When the A/C is in the non heating state, operate the heating button, the button indicator light is ON, and the A/C enters the heating mode.

When the A/C is in the heating mode, operate the heating button, the button indicator light goes out, and the A/C exits the heating mode.

4. Air volume adjusting knob

The knob can adjust the air volume at the air outlet. Rotate the knob clockwise to lower the air volume and counterclockwise to raise the air volume.

5. Air conditioning closed button

Press the "button" to close A/C system.

Defrosting/defogging button of front windshield

Press the front windshield defrost/defogger button to enter the front windshield defrost/defogging mode. After turning on the defrost/defogging switch, the air volume is automatically adjusted to 8th gear.

Tips: During the defogging period, it is recommended to turn on the A/C cooling function to improve the defogging efficiency. If you feel that the temperature is low, you can turn on the HEAT heating function to adjust the outlet air temperature to ensure the comfort and defogging efficiency in the car.

7. Defrosting/defogging button of rear windshield

Operate the rear windshield defrost/defogger button to turn on the heating function of the exterior rearview mirror and rear windshield, and the button indicator lights up and displays on the screen. This function will automatically turn off after 15 minutes of continuous operation, and the button indicator light will turn off. If you need to start again, you need to operate the button again. When the rear window heating function is activated, press the button again, the

function will be turned off, and the button indicator light will turn off.

8. Mode switch button

Press the button, the mode cycle switching sequence:

: The airflow blows to the face.

The airflow blows to the face and feet.

The airflow blows to the feet.

: The airflow blows to the front windshield and feet

During mode switching, in order to raise comfort, the air volume gradually reaches the set gear with mode switching.

 Internal/external circulation switch button

When the indicator light is on, it indicates internal circulation mode, and when the indicator light is off, it indicates external circulation mode. After pressing the internal and external circulation switching button, the system switches the circulation mode (if it is internal circulation before pressing, it is external circulation after pressing; vice versa). the circulation icon on the display screen changes and the work indicator light changes with it from this moment.

10. economic mode button

Press this button and the air conditioner runs in economic mode.

#### Use A/C

Starting the air conditioner can reduce the temperature and air humidity in the car. The A/C is only available when the "Ignition Switch" is in the "ON" position or the "Start /Stop Button" is in the "run" mode and the complete is in ready state.

In the refrigeration process, the A/C compressor will consume energy and raise the energy consumption rate. Therefore, in order to shorten the operation time of the air conditioning system as much as possible, please pay attention to the following matters:

- If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high due to the sun exposure of the vehicle, open the door and window while opening the A/C to quickly exhaust the hot air in the vehicle.
- If you use the air conditioning system during driving, be sure to close all windows to give full play to its efficiency.
- When the fan is turned on, the air conditioner enters the working state.
   When the fan is turned off or the ambient temperature is close to zero, the air conditioner will not cool. When the fan is turned off, the heating function of the air conditioner cannot be started.
   When the cooling button and heating

- button are not pressed, the A/C only has ventilation function.
- The operation of A/C system raises extra power consumption. When the electric quantity of power battery is low, it is recommended to reduce the service time of air conditioner to maximize the cruising range of the vehicle.
- In order to defrost or demist the windshield as soon as possible, it is recommended to turn on the heating function when defrosting is required and adjust to the internal circulation mode, turn on the refrigeration function when demisting is required and adjust to the external circulation mode. If the ambient temperature is low, the heating mode can be used for demisting, and the external circulation mode is recommended for heating and demisting.
- If the ambient air humidity is high, the windows may be slightly fogged when the air conditioning system is turned on. This is a normal phenomenon, not a malfunction. The fogging phenomenon will disappear after the air conditioning system runs for about a few seconds.

#### A/C Maintenance

The air conditioning system must be maintained by personnel with certain professional knowledge equipped with necessary special tools. Therefore, when the air conditioning system fails, please be sure to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair

If the air conditioning system is not used for a long period of time, the air conditioning evaporator will smell due to natural deposition. Therefore, start the air conditioning system at least once a month and operate it under the maximum working condition for a period of time to eliminate and prevent the peculiar smell of the evaporator. Open any window during performing these operations.

The excess water generated during the dehumidification process is drained by the system through the drain pipe at the bottom of the vehicle, which may cause water to accumulate on the road surface when the vehicle is stationary. This is a normal phenomenon

#### **Maximum ventilation**

Set the fan switch into 6th gear, adjust the mode into face ventilation mode, and the air outlet of the A/C will blow out the maximum air output. When the interior of the vehicle

reaches a suitable temperature, adjust the fan speed to the most comfortable setting.

#### Cool down fast

When the "ignition switch" is in the "ON" position, or the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode and the vehicle is in the READY state, start the A/C to operate the refrigeration button and the temperature adjustment button, adjust the temperature to the lowest, and the cold air is blown out through the air outlet on the dashboard; operate the air volume adjustment knob to the maximum value, turn on the maximum speed of the blower and start the air circulation (which can prevent the outdoor hot air from entering the vehicle interior).

Once the internal cooling is completed, turn off the internal air circulation, and then reset the air volume as demanded.

## i Hint

If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high when the complete is in the READY state, it will take some time to adjust the temperature inside the vehicle to a suitable temperature by the air conditioner. Before turning on the A/C, set the fan to the highest speed and open the window, which can circulate and exchange the air inside the vehicle in a short time, which is beneficial to quickly reduce the temperature inside the car.

## Rapid heating

When the "ignition switch" is in the "ON" position, or the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode and the vehicle is in the READY state, start the A/C to operate the heating button, set the fan to maximum speed and turn on the air recirculation switch (to prevent cold air from being drawn from outside the vehicle into the vehicle interior). Once the internal heating is completed, Air recirculation can be turned off on demand and the air speed and temperature set values can be reset as desired.

## Windshield defrosting and defogging

Defrost mode on: When the air conditioner is on, adjust the mode knob to defrost mode for defrosting.

Recommended status: when the window is fogged in summer, it is recommended to turn on the cooling function by operating the cooling button and turn on the internal circulation simultaneously to rapidly defog at high air speed; When the window is fogged in winter, it is recommended to turn on the heater by operating the heating button and turn on the external circulation simultaneously to defog rapidly at high air speed. When there is frost on the outside of the window, the heating function can be started through the heating button and the internal circulation can be started, and then the maximum wind speed can be used to realize rapid defrosting.

## Air filtration System

The air filtration system is composed of high-efficiency filter screens, which can effectively remove large and small particles and PM2.5 fine particles in the air. In order to ensure that the system maintains a high filtration efficiency for large particles and PM2.5, it is recommended to replace it every 12 months.

## A/C pollen filtering function

The pollen filtering function can filter the fresh air of the air conditioner, which effectively removes the pollen and dust particles from the air to provide clean air for the occupants.

## Lower humidity

The air conditioning cooling function can reduce the humidity of the air and is used for rapidly defogging the windows and drying the air inside in a humid environment. When the external temperature is higher than zero, it is recommended to use the refrigeration function for dehumidification operation, which is suitable for most driving conditions.

#### Center air outlet

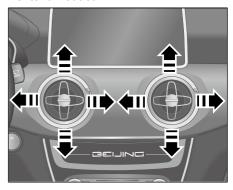


Figure-Air distribution direction adjustment of center air outlet

If you want to adjust the air flow direction of the central air outlet, you can toggle the tabs on the central air outlet up, down, left and right.

#### Driver side air outlet

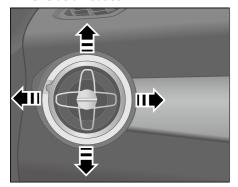


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of driver's center air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the air vent on the driver side, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet counterclockwise to open the air outlet.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet clockwise to close the air outlet.

## Air outlet of passenger's side

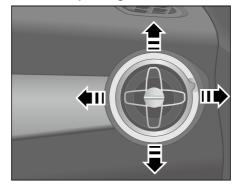


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of passenger side air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the air vent on the passenger side, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet counterclockwise to open the air outlet.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet clockwise to close the air outlet.

#### Rear-row air outlet:

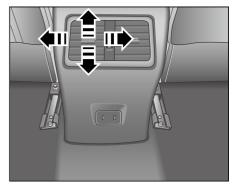


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of rear-row air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the rearrow air vent, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

## Air conditioner system (auto A/C)

## Air conditioner control panel

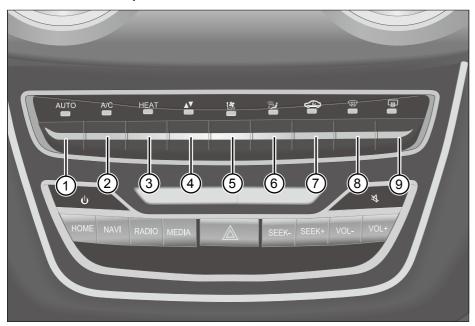


Figure-Function button of A/C control panel

- Auto operation button (AUTO button)
- A/C ON/OFF (A/C button)
- Heating button (heat button)
- Temperature adjusting button
- Air volume adjusting button
- Mode switch button
- Internal/external circulation switch key
- Defrosting/defogging button of front windshield
- Defrosting/defogging button of rear windshield

#### 1. Auto operation button (AUTO button)

Press the automatic operation button (auto), and the air conditioning system enters the automatic operation mode. At this time, the button indicator lights up and the auto icon will appear on the display screen.

In the fully automatic operation mode, press any button of mode switching button, air volume adjustment button, A/C button, internal/external circulation switching button, and windshield defrosting and defogging button, and the system will execute the button command to exit the AUTO state. When the icon is canceled on the screen, the button indicator light goes out. Other functions that were originally running automatically continue to be automatically controlled by the system.

## 2. A/C System ON/OFF (A/C button)

Press the A/C ON/OFF button (A/C) and the A/C icon will appear on the display. Press this button again and the A / C icon disappears on the display.

When the system is in the automatic operation mode, press this button to exit the automatic operation state of the air conditioning system, and the auto icon will no longer be displayed on the display screen. The air conditioning system will resume the automatic operation mode only by pressing

the automatic operation button again.

## 3. Heating button

When the A/C is in the non heating state, operate the heating button, the button indicator light is ON, the A/C enters the heating mode and the heating mode display on the screen.

When the A/C is in the heating mode, operate the heating button, the button indicator light goes out, the A/C exits the heating mode and and the exiting heating mode display on the screen..

## 4. Temperature adjusting button

The button can adjust the temperature of the air outlet. Pull the button up to raise the temperature, and push it down to lower the temperature.

### 5. Air volume adjusting button

Toggle the button upward to raise the wind speed at the air outlet, and toggle the button downward to decrease the wind speed at the air outlet; Press and hold down the button for more than 1s to turn off the A/C system.

#### 6. Mode switch button

Press the button, the mode cycle switching sequence:

: The airflow blows to the face.

The airflow blows to the face and feet.

The airflow blows to the feet.

: The airflow blows to the front windshield and feet

During mode switching, in order to raise comfort, the air volume gradually reaches the set gear with mode switching.

## Internal/external circulation switch button

When the indicator light is on, it indicates internal circulation mode, and when the indicator light is off, it indicates external circulation mode. After pressing the internal and external circulation switching button, the system switches the circulation mode (if it is internal circulation before pressing, it is external circulation after pressing; vice versa). the circulation icon on the display screen changes and the work indicator light changes with it from this moment.

 Defrosting/defogging button of front windshield

Press the front windshield defrost/defogger button to enter the front windshield defrost/defogging mode. After turning on the defrost/defogging switch, the air volume is automatically adjusted to 8th gear.

Tips: During the defogging period, it is recommended to turn on the A/C cooling function to improve the defogging efficiency. If you feel that the temperature is low, you can turn on the HEAT heating function to adjust the outlet air temperature to ensure the comfort and defogging efficiency in the car.

 Defrosting/defogging button of rear windshield

Operate the rear windshield defrost/defogger button to turn on the heating function of the exterior rearview mirror and rear windshield, and the button indicator lights up and displays on the screen. This function will automatically turn off after 15 minutes of continuous operation, and the button indicator light will turn off. If you need to start again, you need to operate the button again. When the rear window heating function is activated, press the button again, the function will be turned off, and the button indicator light will turn off.

#### Use A/C

Starting the air conditioner can reduce the temperature and air humidity in the car. Adjustment is only available when the "Start/Stop Button" is in "RUN" and the vehicle is in READY state.

In the refrigeration process, the A/C compressor will consume energy and raise the energy consumption rate. Therefore, in order to shorten the operation time of the air conditioning system as much as possible, please pay attention to the following matters:

- If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high due to the sun exposure of the vehicle, open the door and window while opening the A/C to quickly exhaust the hot air in the vehicle.
- If you use the air conditioning system during driving, be sure to close all windows to give full play to its efficiency.
- When the fan is turned on, the air conditioner enters the working state. When the fan is turned off or the ambient temperature is close to zero, the air conditioner will not cool. When the fan is turned off, the heating function of the air conditioner cannot be started. When the cooling button and heating button are not pressed, the A/C only

has ventilation function.

- The operation of A/C system raises extra power consumption. When the electric quantity of power battery is low, it is recommended to reduce the service time of air conditioner to maximize the cruising range of the vehicle.
- In order to defrost or demist the windshield as soon as possible, it is recommended to turn on the heating function when defrosting is required and adjust to the internal circulation mode, turn on the refrigeration function when demisting is required and adjust to the external circulation mode. If the ambient temperature is low, the heating mode can be used for demisting, and the external circulation mode is recommended for heating and demisting.
- If the ambient air humidity is high, the windows may be slightly fogged when the air conditioning system is turned on. This is a normal phenomenon, not a malfunction. The fogging phenomenon will disappear after the air conditioning system runs for about a few seconds.

#### A/C Maintenance

The air conditioning system must be maintained by personnel with certain professional knowledge equipped with necessary special tools. Therefore, when the air conditioning system fails, please be sure to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair

If the air conditioning system is not used for a long period of time, the air conditioning evaporator will smell due to natural deposition. Therefore, start the air conditioning system at least once a month and operate it under the maximum working condition for a period of time to eliminate and prevent the peculiar smell of the evaporator. Open any window during performing these operations.

The excess water generated during the dehumidification process is drained by the system through the drain pipe at the bottom of the vehicle, which may cause water to accumulate on the road surface when the vehicle is stationary. This is a normal phenomenon

#### **Maximum ventilation**

Set the fan on gear 7, adjust the mode to face ventilation, and the air outlet of the air conditioner will be in the maximum air output mode. When the interior of the vehicle

reaches a suitable temperature, adjust the fan speed to the most comfortable setting.

#### Cool down fast

When the "Start/Stop Button" is in the "RUN" mode and the vehicle is in the READY state, start the A/C to operate the refrigeration button and the temperature adjustment button, adjust the temperature to the lowest, and the cold air is blown out through the air outlet on the dashboard; operate the air volume adjustment knob to the maximum value, turn on the maximum speed of the blower and start the air circulation (which can prevent the outdoor hot air from entering the vehicle interior).

Once the internal cooling is completed, turn off the internal air circulation, and then reset the air volume as demanded.

## i Hint

If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high when the complete is in the READY state, it will take some time to adjust the temperature inside the vehicle to a suitable temperature by the air conditioner. Before turning on the A/C, set the fan to the highest speed and open the window, which can circulate and exchange the air inside the vehicle in a short time, which is beneficial to quickly reduce the temperature inside the car.

## Rapid heating

When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" mode and the vehicle is in the READY state, start the A/C to operate the heating button, set the fan to maximum speed and turn on the air recirculation switch (to prevent cold air from being drawn from outside the vehicle into the vehicle interior). Once the internal heating is completed, Air recirculation can be turned off on demand and the air speed and temperature set values can be reset as desired.

### Windshield defrosting and defogging

Defrost mode on: When the air conditioner is on, adjust the mode knob to defrost

mode W for defrosting.

Recommended status: when the window is fogged in summer, it is recommended to turn on the cooling function by operating the cooling button and turn on the internal circulation simultaneously to rapidly defog at high air speed; When the window is fogged in winter, it is recommended to turn on the heater by operating the heating button and turn on the external circulation simultaneously to defog rapidly at high air speed. When there is frost on the outside of the window, the heating function can be started through the heating button and the internal circulation can be started, and then the maximum wind speed can be used to realize rapid defrosting.

## Air filtration System

The air filtration system is composed of high-efficiency filter screens, which can effectively remove large and small particles and PM2.5 fine particles in the air. In order to ensure that the system maintains a high filtration efficiency for large particles and PM2.5, it is recommended to replace it every 12 months.

## A/C pollen filtering function

The pollen filtering function can filter the fresh air of the air conditioner, which effectively removes the pollen and dust particles from the air to provide clean air for the occupants.

## Lower humidity

The air conditioning cooling function can reduce the humidity of the air and is used for rapidly defogging the windows and drying the air inside in a humid environment. When the external temperature is higher than zero, it is recommended to use the refrigeration function for dehumidification operation, which is suitable for most driving conditions.

#### Center air outlet\*

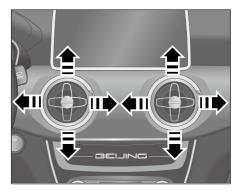


Figure-Air distribution direction adjustment of center air outlet

If you want to adjust the air flow direction of the central air outlet, you can toggle the tabs on the central air outlet up, down, left and right.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet counterclockwise to open the air outlet.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet clockwise to close the air outlet.

#### Driver side air outlet

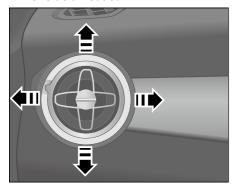


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of driver's center air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the air vent on the driver side, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet counterclockwise to open the air outlet.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet clockwise to close the air outlet.

## Air outlet of passenger's side

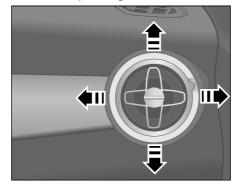


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of passenger side air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the air vent on the passenger side, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet counterclockwise to open the air outlet.

Turn the knob at the edge of the air outlet clockwise to close the air outlet.

## Rear-row air outlet:

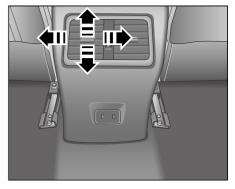


Figure-airflow distribution direction adjustment of rear-row air outlet

To adjust the air flow direction of the rearrow air vent, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

# Entertainment navigation system

# Navigation and multimedia audio system

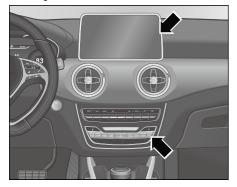


Figure- Navigation and multimedia audio system
The vehicle is equipped with navigation
function and multimedia sound system.
Please refer to the special instructions for
specific use.

## Intelligent vehicle system\*

Some models are equipped with intelligent vehicle systems integrating satellite navigation, wireless internet access, voice interaction, Bluetooth call, network music, radio and online radio. Please refer to separate instructions for specific use methods.

# Speed sensing sound compensation system

When the vehicle is running at high speed, the background noise will raise with the raise of vehicle speed. And the SVC system will dynamically adjust the entertainment sound volume based on the vehicle speed, so as to always ensure good listening feeling for occupants.

## **Event data recording system**

The vehicle is equipped with Event Data Recording system (EDR), whose purpose is to mainly record some vehicle status data in case of major collision accident, including vehicle longitudinal acceleration, braking status, vehicle speed and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), so as to learn about the vehicle driving situation in case of accident. EDR will not record data under normal driving conditions.

Specific meaning of record content:

- Longitudinal acceleration: the acceleration of the vehicle in the forward direction when the collision accident occurs.
- Braking state: the braking condition when the collision accident occurs.
- Vehicle speed: The speed of the vehicle at the time of collision.
- Vehicle identification code: that is, vehicle VIN code.

## i Hint

All the above information records are for mastering the vehicle status information at the time of the accident, which is convenient for the third party (such as law enforcement departments) to investigate the collision accident.

After obtaining the vehicle and EDR authorization, the data recorded by EDR can be read by special equipment In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, a third party with professional equipment (such as law enforcement authorities) can read the relevant information when authorized to use the vehicle or EDR.

## **Diagnosis interface**

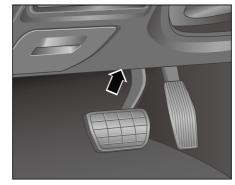


figure-Diagnostic interface

The diagnostic interface is located at the lower left of the dashboard. The diagnostic interface is used for digital communication between the vehicle electronic control unit and the diagnostic equipment, and the vehicle identification number information can be read by the diagnostic interface.

The vehicle identification code can be read out on the diagnostic interface by the external diagnostic equipment.

#### Automobile data recorder

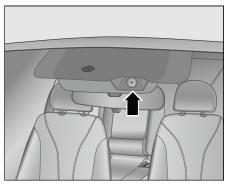


Figure-Automobile data recorder

Digital Video Recorder (DVR) is a vehicle driving information recording system, whose purpose is to mainly collect the video and audio signals in front of the vehicle during driving and store them in the memory card to provide evidence for driving.

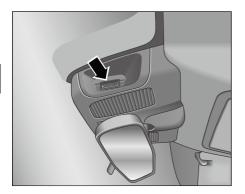


Figure-Installing position of SD card of automobile data recorder

The installation position of the MicroSD card and SD card of the automobile data recorder is located in the front left of the interior rearview mirror and on the left side of the driving recorder housing.

#### Note

In order to ensure the normal experience of the function of the automobile data recorder, please equip the user with a MicroSD card with a capacity of 8G ~ 128G, and the recommended SD card level: Class10.

The main functions of the DVR system are as follows:

Loop video: the recording of DVR is loop video by default, which is stored in the loop video folder. And when the folder is full, the earliest video will be overwritten by the latest video.

Emergency recording: The emergency recording triggering methods are divided into automatic triggering and manual triggering. When the vehicle is subject to emergency braking, collision and yaw, DVR will automatically trigger emergency video recording, which also can be triggered manually by pressing and holding the fast camera button on the steering wheel. When the emergency video recording function is triggered, the system will automatically record the video of 15 seconds before and after the trigger point, a total of 30 seconds, and store it in the emergency video folder. And the emergency video will not be automatically overwritten, but needs to be deleted manually after the folder is full.

Camera: the camera function is realized by the "Fast Camera" button on the steering wheel and the 🕲 button in the App, and the pictures are stored in the photo folder.

## System operation



Figure-Central control screen interface of automobile data recorder

Users can operate the DVR by the automobile data recorder App on AVN.

View real-time screen

On the AVN HOME interface, click the automobile data recorder icon to enter the main interface of the driving recorder App, and the system will automatically play the real-time picture.

#### Note

- Due to the slight delay in the display of DVR real-time picture, please do not use this as a reference when driving, and please take the actual road conditions as the standard;
- In order to prevent accidents caused by operating the DVR during driving, the DVR will automatically exit when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km / h, and the DVR will remain in the recording state before exiting;
- When the WIFI signal is interfered, the real-time picture may freeze and blur, but it will not affect the quality of the recorded video.
- Under extreme conditions (high ambient humidity and large temperature difference), the lens of the automobile data recorder may fog up. This is a normal phenomenon. The lens fog will automatically dissipate within an hour after the environment returns to normal.

Taking Pictures

Touch the screen on the main interface, a floating menu will pop up at the bottom of the screen, click 3, and the DVR will take a photo.

ON/OFF Recording

Every time the vehicle is powered on, the DVR starts to record in a loop by default, click to stop recording, click to start recording.

· Check the file

Click (a) to enter the file browsing interface to view loop recordings, emergency recordings and photos. Click the file thumbnail to view the file, press and hold the thumbnail to delete and move the selected file.

#### Note

The transfer storage operation can transfer and store the selected circular video to the emergency video folder, so as to avoid being automatically overwritten by the system. If you want to delete it, you need to complete it manually.

#### Set DVR

Click to enter the DVR setting interface:

Recording duration: DVR recording adopts segmented recording, each segment can be selected as 1min, 3min, 5min, and the default duration is 3min:

Recording resolution: DVR video resolution can be selected as 720p, 1080p, the default resolution is 1080p;

Sound recording: DVR turns off recording by default, the user can manually turn it on; WiFi password setting: the default password of DVR is 12345678, and the user can change it to any other 8-32-bit password.

#### Note

- To ensure the safety of video data, it is recommended to change the password as soon as possible;
- If the user forgets the changed password, the system can be restored to the default password in the 4S store.

System version information: DVR controller software (SoC, MCU) version, hardware version, App version can be checked.

SD Card Format: Click this button to format the SD card.

SD card capacity inquiry: SD card total capacity, occupied space, available space can be checked.

SD card removal: click this button to safely remove the SD card.

#### Note

The DVR supports hot-plugging of SD cards, but hot-plugging may result in the loss of recorded content in the current period. To ensure the integrity of the recordings, it is recommended to use the "SD card removal" button to safely remove the SD card.



Figure- Fast Camera

Users can also operate the DVR by the "Fast Camera" button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Short press the "Fast Camera" button, the DVR will take pictures.

Long press the "Fast Camera" button, the DVR will record the video.

## Intelligent •Inclusiveness •Butler

# App scanning and downloading

Scan the QR code through WeChat, QQ, and browser "Scan" function to enter the download page, and click "Click here to download" on the download page.

Apple users will enter the Zhihui Butler AppStore interface, click Get, and complete the installation through fingerprint authentication ID.

Android users can directly download the installation package file, save and open the installation package to complete the installation.



Figure - APP QR code

## **App Market Download**

You can search "Al Reminder" on Appstore, Huawei, Xiaomi, Oppo, Vivo system application stores, Myapp, 360 App market and other platforms, select it and click download to complete the installation.

## **Registration and Certification**

Open the AI Reminder APP, enter the mobile phone number and verification code, register and log in, click "Bind Vehicle" in the car module in the APP, submit the ID photo, driving license (or car purchase invoice) to complete the owner authentication.

## **APP function**

Al Reminder APP provides users with a one-stop solution integrating the functions of recommended selection, car friend community, car owner service, points mall and so on.

Users can query the basic status information of the vehicle (such as the total mileage of the vehicle, the charging and discharging status of the vehicle, the current position of the vehicle, etc.) through the Intelligent \*Inclusiveness \*Butler APP. Stop charging and schedule charging.

The APP will push the electronic first maintenance coupon to the user after completing the authentication. And with the coupon code, the user can go to the store for the first free maintenance of the vehicle.

## 3. Drive Guide

Starting and Driving	16 <sup>-</sup>
Brake System	179
Steering System	19 <sup>,</sup>
Panoramic image system (AVM)*	192
Lane departure warning system (LDW)*	20
Intelligent High Beam Assist (HMA)*	20
Constant cruise control*	20
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)	20
Early warning assistant braking system	21
Low-speed pedestrian warning system	22
Tire pressure monitoring system	22
Parking sensors and parking rear view system *	22
Complete vehicle control	23
Power battery	23
Charge system description	23
Driving skills	24

## **Starting and Driving**

### **Motor drive**

## **General description**

All work for high voltage systems shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV according to relevant guidelines and specifications.

The high-voltage electrical system consists of the following high-voltage electrical components: power battery system, high-voltage drive integrated unit and orange high-voltage cables, etc.

#### Note

Do not allow water or other liquids to intrude on the connections between the power battery cover plate and the high-voltage cable, otherwise the electrical system or power battery will be seriously damaged!

## **↑** WARNING

The electrical system voltage and power battery voltage in the high-voltage electrical system are fatal! Do not touch damaged high-voltage cables or power batteries to avoid fatal electric shocks!

- Unqualified personnel must not attempt to carry out any maintenance operations on high-voltage power systems, orange high-voltage cables, or power batteries. All work for high voltage systems shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV according to relevant guidelines and specifications.
- Do not damage or remove the orange high-voltage cable or disconnect it from the high voltage power system.
- Any operation for the high voltage system can only be carried out by the professional technicians of the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. Dry powder fire extinguishers or carbon dioxide fire extinguishers must be used to put out the fire. Water or foam fire extinguishers are strictly prohibited. And to prevent inhalation of the gases released by the combustion.
- Any operation of the high-voltage electric system or power battery must comply with the guidelines of BAIC BJEV.

## **↑** WARNING

The driving and running noise from the driving motor is much lower than that from the engine during driving, and is imperceptible or impossible to be heard by other road users, such as walkers or children. In some situations, such as driving in a noisy environment or reversing, traffic accidents and injuries can occur.

 Before leaving the vehicle, make sure the "Start/Stop" button is in the "OFF" position and the powertrain is switched off.

## **MARNING**

Functional operation of combination instrument during driving will distract attention to road conditions and easily lead to traffic accidents!

 The instrument cluster can only be set when the vehicle is completely stationary, thus reducing the risk of accidents and injuries!

## **↑** WARNING

- Do not park the vehicle when the power system is started and the vehicle is not in "P", so as to avoid serious accidents and fatal injuries caused by vehicle accidental movement!
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the gear of the complete vehicle is in the "P" position, the speed is "0" and the parking brake is applied.
- Vehicles shall not be tested on test rigs or similar equipment. Accidental movement of vehicles may cause serious accidents and fatal injuries!

## Collision causes the high voltage function to be disconnected

When the complete vehicle collides, if the airbag is started, the complete vehicle will automatically disconnect the high-voltage system to ensure the safety of drivers and passengers.

## **Operation mode**

The following functions and modes are automatically set by the electronic control system based on the operations of vehicle. And the driver can allow the vehicle to run in ECO or SPORT mode according to the driving mode.

#### **Drive mode**

The motor is powered by a power battery. The following factors will affect the mileage driven by the motor and the power performance of the complete vehicle:

- Power battery capacity
- Speed
- · Power system failure
- Power system overheating
- The complete vehicle is in low temperature environment for a long time
- Accelerator pedal failure
- Vacuum booster system failure
- Power battery temperature
- Vehicle loads

## **Energy regeneration mode**

When the vehicle is braking or sliding, the vehicle enters the energy recovery mode. Part of the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy by driving the motor and then stored in the power battery system.

The driver can set the braking energy recovery intensity through the braking energy regeneration adjustment button.

Three gears can be set for the adjustment of braking energy regeneration strength, namely (1, 2, 3) gear, and the corresponding braking Energy regeneration strength raises or decreases with the set number of gears. The minimum is 1st gear, the second is 2nd gear, and the maximum is 3rd gear.

When the braking energy regeneration function is activated, the indicator light "2" on the display screen of the trip computer lights up (indicator light "2" indicates that the braking energy regeneration intensity is at level 2, and for others, the number in the middle of the corresponding symbol will change accordingly), and the system enters the braking energy regeneration mode. The initial default setting of the Brake Energy Regeneration Intensity gear is 1st gear. When the "start/stop button" is in the "RUN" position, the system will default to the driv-

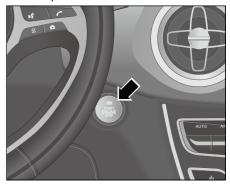
er's setting gear for Brake Energy Regeneration intensity before the last powertrain shutdown.

When the acceptable recovery power of the battery is less than a certain value, the Brake Energy Regeneration function will be temporarily turned off. The combination instrument indicator "  $\[ \bigcirc \]$  " is on.

## i Hint

Battery motor failure, ABS failure, battery temperature, SOC, vehicle speed, road condition, and other factors may weaken the energy recovery function or even turn it off. The braking energy regeneration may fluctuate or even decrease when running over the bumpy, slippery and other poor roads during coasting. At this time, the driver needs to depress the brake pedal further, rather than relying on energy regeneration to slow down.

#### Start-Stop button



Start-Stop button

Figure-"Start/Stop Button" Position

The keyless "start/stop button" mode is consistent with the traditional "start/stop button" gear. When the smart key is in the car, the vehicle is started and stopped by pressing the "start/stop button" to "OFF", "RUN" and "ACC".

When the smart key is in the car, when the brake pedal is not pressed and the gear is in "P" gear, pressing the "Start/Stop button" can switch the power mode in the following sequence:

When the button is not pressed: the "start/ stop button" is turned off, which is the "OFF" mode:

- Pressing the button for the first time: "RUN" mode is turned on, and all electrical devices are on;
- When the button is pressed for the second time: "ACC" mode is turned on, and some electrical equipment is on;
- The third time the button is pressed, it returns to "OFF" mode.

Press the engine start/stop button successively to switch circularly among the three modes of "OFF,"  $\rightarrow$  "RUN,"  $\rightarrow$  "ACC".

## i Hint

- Some models are not equipped with "ACC" mode.
- Press the engine start/stop button successively to switch circularly among the two modes of "OFF," → "RUN," → "OFF".

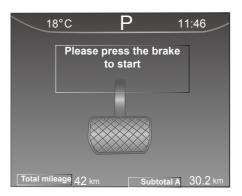


Figure - please press the brake to start

If the brake pedal is not pressed while pressing the "start/stop button", the combination instrument will prompt the driver "please press the brake to start".

## Smart key backup start function



Figure - emergency start sign

If the vehicle is in a strong signal interference area, or when the battery of the smart key is low, when you press the "Start/Stop button" to try to start the vehicle, the standby start function should be used at this time.

Put the smart key in the cup holder with emergency start mark, and press the "Start/ Stop button" to realize the spare key function, switch the power mode and start the vehicle.

## Electronic burglar alarm function

The electronic burglar alarm function is used to prevent others from illegally stealing vehicles. The transceiver chip in the smart key is equipped with an electronic code which is sent to the vehicle. The drive motor can be started only when the electronic code of the transceiver chip is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

#### Lock the steering wheel

The "Start/Stop Button" is in "OFF" mode. Open the driver's door or press the remote key lock button, the steering wheel is locked at this time (if you turn the steering wheel, you will hear a "click" sound).

# The power system enters the starting state

## One-button start power system

The power system can be started only when the smart key is within the valid range. The starting method of the models with one-button start is as follows:

- Press the brake pedal down all the way and hold it there.
- Press the "Start/Stop" button once to turn on the "RUN" mode and start the drive motor.

#### Note

If the power system fails to start, stop the start operation and wait 5 seconds before trying to start again.

## **∱** WARNING

- Do not turn off the "start/stop button" before the vehicle stops, otherwise, the vehicle may lose control and cause serious casualties.
- Do not leave the vehicle unattended after the power system enters the starting state.
- The brake booster can only work when the power system is started. Therefore, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force to stop the vehicle in case that the power system is turned off.
- The steering booster can only work when the power system is started, so it needs more force to turn the steering wheel during steering in case that the power system is turned off.

## Close the power system

## One-button closing power system

- Stop the vehicle, step on the brake pedal, operate the shift knob, placed the whole vehicle gear into "P" gear, and turn on the electronic parking brake switch before releasing the brake pedal.
- After releasing the brake pedal, press the "Start/Stop button" once, and the power system is turned off.

## **Driving description**

## Shift knob

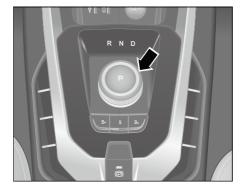


Figure-Central control console partial view: shift knob

The gear indicator is located on the knobtype electronic shift panel. After the vehicle is powered on, the backlight lights up.

- When the "P" gear is displayed on the shift knob panel, start the power system.
- Press and hold the brake pedal, switch the gear of the vehicle to "D" or "S", and enter the normal gear shifting procedure.

3. After shifting, keep the electronic parking brake switch on, and then slowly depress the accelerator pedal, so that the vehicle can be started on the slope and enter the driving state. Press the brake pedal to make the vehicle stop stably, switch the gear to "P" gear, and the "P" gear indicator light is on; Pull up the electric parking brake switch and the indicator light of the electric parking brake switch will be on

## Operating instructions of shift knob

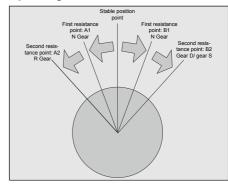


Figure- Operating instructions of shift knob

Send N gear request: Turn the shift knob to the left or right until the first resistance point and release it Send an R request: Rotate the shift knob to the left, past the first point of resistance to the second point of resistance, and release. Sending a D gear request: the vehicle is initially powered on, turn the shift knob to the right, exceed the first resistance point until the second resistance point and release it. Send an R request: Rotate the shift knob to the left, past the first point of resistance to the second point of resistance, and release it.

Sending a P-gear request: Press the P-gear button on the top of the shift knob.

Send S gear request: When the current gear is D gear, press the S gear button on the panel. Send an S request: Rotate the shift knob to the left, past the first point of resistance to the second point of resistance, and release it.

Description of the following gears:

R (Reverse)

When reversing, operate the shift knob to shift the vehicle to "R", before which make sure that the vehicle has completely stopped, the brake pedal depressed, the vehicle shifted to "R", and the letter "R" is displayed in red. The remaining unselected shift letters are white. When reversing, the reversing light will come on automatically.

N (Neutral)

When the vehicle stops completely (such as waiting for traffic lights), neutral can be selected. When the gear is in neutral and the reducer is not locked, you must step on the brake pedal or turn on the electronic parking brake switch to prevent sliding.

Before selecting "N", you need to make sure the vehicle is stopped.

If you want to shift the gear of the vehicle from "N" to other gears, you must first depress the brake pedal.

# i Hint

When the vehicle is stationary, the driver must also depress the brake pedal to shift successfully. If not, the instrument will display the current gear of the vehicle and give a short chime.

#### D (Drive)

Generally, this gear is used when the vehicle is driving forward, and the "D" gear is the driving gear, which can realize the optimal dynamic performance of the whole vehicle.

Please step on the brake pedal before shifting, otherwise, the gear selection is invalid. Operate the shift knob to switch the complete vehicle gear to "D" gear, and the letter "D" is displayed as ice blue. The remaining unselected shift letters are white.

#### Note

During driving, do not place your hand on the shift knob. The pressure of your hand may cause the shift knob to wear prematurely.

## P (Park)

When stopping, press the brake pedal. After the vehicle stops, press the "P" lock switch button to realize the "P" motor lock function, and the working indicator light of the "P" lock switch button lights up. Pull up the electronic parking switch and the indicator light of the electronic parking switch lights up.

"P" has unlocking function, before which, depress the brake pedal and rotate the shift knob to shift to any of "N", "R" or "D" gears to realize the unlocking function of "P" gear.

# i Hint

After the vehicle is powered off, the vehicle will automatically switch to "P" for parking.

#### Note

Only use the "P" gear to park on the slope, otherwise the reducer will be damaged.

### Forward gear economy mode

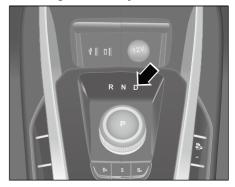


Figure - Partial view of center console: Economy mode "D" in forward gear

Depress the brake pedal, operate the shift knob, and switch the gear of the vehicle to "D" to open the forward gear economy mode.

"D" gear is a economic gear that when the vehicle is shifted to this gear, the drive motor controller reduces energy consumption by reducing the power. The driving torque response in "D" gear is slower than that in "S" gear to optimize the braking energy regeneration.

"D" gear can extend the driving range of the vehicle by using the specific methods, as follows:

- Reduced drive torque response
- · Limiting power
- Maximum output torque with reduced accelerator pedal opening (excluding full accelerator pedal opening)
- The maximum speed in "D" gear is the same as that in "S" gear, and the acceleration performance in "D" gear is weaker than that in "S" gear when the accelerator pedal is floored

## Forward gear sport mode



Figure -Partial view of the center console: forward gear sport mode "S"

Depress the brake pedal, operate the shift knob, switch the vehicle gear to "D" gear, and then press "S" gear to open the forward gear sports mode.

"S" gear is a SPORT gear. And when the vehicle is in this gear, the power performance of the vehicle is optimized. Compared with "D", "S" gear has less braking energy regeneration intensity.

# Brake energy regeneration adjustment button

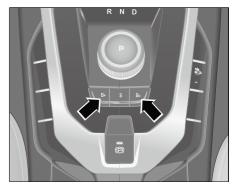


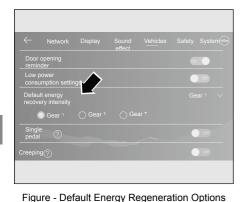
Figure- Brake energy regeneration adjustment button

The braking energy regeneration adjustment button has two buttons, B + and B-, which have the following functions:

B+ indicates that the braking energy regeneration intensity is raised, and the maximum can be adjusted to 3 gears.

B - indicates that the braking energy regeneration intensity reduces, and the maximum adjustable 1st gear.

B- Indicates that the braking energy regeneration intensity is reduced, and the minimum can be adjusted to 1 gear.



The default energy regeneration intensity can be selected in the setting of the center console display. When the default energy regeneration intensity gear is switched to another value, it can be immediately reflected in this driving condition. And it will still default to the currently selected energy

regeneration level even when the vehicle is

powered off and restarted.

### **Shifting into Reverse**

- Stop the vehicle firmly.
- Depress the brake pedal, operate the shift knob, and switch the gear of the vehicle to "R"
- After shifting gears, slowly release the brake pedal and the vehicle will drive in reverse.

At this point, keep the Start/Stop button on:

- The backup signal lights come on.
- The backup rear-view system is activated automatically and the back-up image appears on the central control display screen (for some vehicle models).
- The reverse parking assistant is started. When the car get near the barrier, it can send sound warnings with different frequency

#### Precautions for parking

- Make sure the windows are closed tightly.
- Turn off all door lights, inspect all indicator lights on the dashboard, and make sure that the immobilizer system is activated.
- Carry the valuables and the remote key on your person. Do not place them

- in the vehicle.
- Do not park the vehicle near flammables or explosives.
- When you are ready to leave the vehicle, please operate the shift knob, switch the vehicle gear to "P" gear, turn on the electronic parking brake switch, close the drive system and lock the door.

## **↑** WARNING

When preparing to park on a slope, to prevent the vehicle from sliding down the slope, before turning off the "Start/Stop Button", turn the steering wheel to make the wheels rest on the curb; when parking facing downhill, turn the steering wheel to make the front wheels rest on the curb; when parking facing uphill, turn the steering wheel so that the rear wheel rests on the curb.

# Gear position display

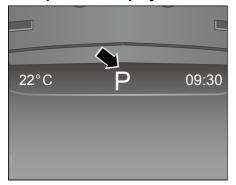


Figure - The current gear information is displayed in the combination instrument

When the driver operates in a gear position, the driving computer display screen in the combination instrument will display the current gear position of the vehicle.

# Gear switching instructions

The following information is particularly important for drivers unfamiliar with vehicles equipped with speed reducers.

#### Start

- Before starting the drive motor, press the brake pedal.
- When "D" or "R" gear is selected, do not let the drive motor run at high speed if the vehicle is stopped and the driving gear has been selected.
- Do not turn off the EPB switch before driving away. Remember that once the driving gear is selected, the vehicle will run slowly forward or backward.
- When the drive gear is selected and the drive motor is running, do not keep the vehicle stationary (if the vehicle needs to be stationary for a long time, always select the "P" gear).

## Gear switching

- When the vehicle is stationary, it can be directly switched from "D / s" gear or "R" gear to "P" gear.
- When the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is depressed, it is possible to shift from "P" to "N", "D", "S", or "R".
- When the whole vehicle is driving at low speed (vehicle speed ≥1km/h and vehicle speed ≤7km/h), it can be shifted from "N" to "D/S" or "R".
- When the whole vehicle is running at high speed (vehicle speed>7km/h), and the rotation direction of the motor is consistent with the current gear direction, you can shift from "N" gear to "D" gear, "S" or "R" gear.
- Free switching between "D" and "S" blocks
- "D/S" or "R" block can be freely switched to "N" block

- When switching between "D" gear and "R" gear: if the vehicle speed is > 7km/h, it cannot be switched; If the vehicle speed is ≥ 1 km/h and ≤ 7 km/h, it can be switched freely between "D" gear and "R" gear; If the vehicle speed is ≥ 0 km/h and ≤ 1 km/h, it is necessary to step on the brake to shift gears.
- When the driver shifts gears incorrectly, there are three warning tones. If the driver shifts gears incorrectly, the gear will stay in the original gear, which can be automatically eliminated under normal circumstances, and long-term misoperation can be eliminated by switching to "N" gear.

#### Cold weather operation

If the vehicle is exposed to cold or low temperatures for a long time (such as the whole night), there may be a delay in gear selection when the vehicle is just started. This characteristic is obvious only after the cold start of the vehicle and will disappear after the vehicle runs.

#### Driving

In the driving process, the driver controls the driving torque through the accelerator pedal to adjust the driving speed of the vehicle, and the motor controller controls the output speed of the driving motor to finally control the vehicle speed.

## Stop the vehicle

After the vehicle stops, before releasing the brake pedal and closing the drive motor, switch the vehicle gear to "P" gear and turn on the electronic parking brake switch.

### Drive away from the snow or mud

During no power output from the drive motor, select "D" or "R" and slowly raise the speed of the drive motor to ensure that the front wheels do not spin and slip. If the wheels slip, use the lowest drive motor speed to regain grip. If unsuccessful, alternately switch "D" or "R" gear and use the lowest drive motor speed until grip is gained again.

# **Brake System**

#### **General Introduction**

All four wheels of the vehicle are equipped with brakes (both front and rear wheels are disc brakes). The brake booster can help the driver reduce the force required to pedal the brake pedal. The anti-lock braking system (ABS) helps the driver maintain steering control during emergency braking.

Some models are equipped with a body electronic stability system (ESP), which can improve the driving stability of vehicles.

If you put your foot on the brake pedal during driving, the brake will operate slightly and generate heat, so as to reduce the braking effect, shorten the service life of the brake lining, and raise the energy consumption. Moreover, if the brake light is always on, it will also cause the wrong judgment of the vehicle driver behind.

After driving through deep water, the brakes must be checked. Press the brake moderately and feel whether the braking effect is normal. If there is any abnormality, the brake should be lightly pressed frequently until the braking effect returns to normal.

During braking operation, the driver needs to go through two stages: feeling time and

reaction time.

First, the driver has to decide whether to step on the brake pedal, which is the feeling time. Then you must raise your foot and press the pedal. This is the reaction time.

The average reaction time is about three quarters of a second. However, this is only the average time, and the specific response time depends on the age, physical condition, vigilance, coordination and eyesight of driver as well as alcohol, drugs and dysthymia. The vehicle will move forward for 20 meters when the speed is 100km/h even if the response time is about three quarters of a second. And in an emergency, the distance may be too long. Therefore, it is very important to keep enough distance from other vehicles.

Of course, the actual braking distance will vary depending on the road surface (eg paved or sandy), road conditions (wet, dry, icy), tire tread, braking vehicle weight, and braking force.

Do not apply the brake pedal urgently when it is not required. Some drivers drive too uncontrollably. For example, they step on the accelerator pedal and then the brake pedal, failing to keep pace with the speed of traffic flow. Driving in this way is very dangerous. The brakes do not have time to cool down

between consecutive emergency braking, and if the brake pedal is frequently pressed hard, it will accelerate the wear of the brakes. Keeping pace with the traffic flow and keeping a certain distance between vehicles will greatly reduce unnecessary emergency braking, which will improve the braking effect and prolong the brake life.

# Factors affecting the braking effect

#### 1. Abrasion

The wear of the brake lining largely depends on the service conditions and the driving mode of the driver. It is very necessary to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to check the thickness of the brake lining within the specified maintenance interval when driving in urban traffic, short distance or in SPORT mode.

Do not brake continuously, but brake intermittently.

#### 2. Moist or sprinkled salt

Under some driving conditions, such as water or heavy rain, or after car washing, the brake disc may be wet or the brake disc and lining may freeze due to low temperature in winter, which will reduce the braking effect and raise the braking distance. Therefore, it is necessary to gently depress the brake pedal at a high speed to "dry" the brake disc as soon as possible, during which, ensure that the following vehicles and other road users are not endangered.

When driving on rainy days and slippery roads, the vehicle speed should be controlled to prevent slippage; when encountering water, the vehicle should be passed at a low speed and a uniform speed. After passing through a road with deep water, the brake pads and brake discs will be soaked in water, which will affect the braking effect. It is necessary to lightly step on the brakes a few times to keep the brake parts dry and restore performance.

Driving on a salt-sprayed road, if there is no braking for a long time, will reduce the braking effect and prolong the braking distance, so you must brake carefully to remove the salt layer on the brake disc and friction pad.

#### 3. Snow and ice weather

Because of the low friction coefficient of ice and snow road surface, the braking distance will be greatly prolonged during braking, and the braking distance will raise with the raise of vehicle speed. Therefore, special attention should be paid to controlling the vehicle speed when driving on ice and snow road surface, and a large safe distance should be kept from the front vehicle or the side vehicle. No coasting with the Neutral position is permitted when driving on icy and snowy road surfaces.

#### Surface rust

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time or you have not operated the brake system for a long period of time, the brake disc may become rusty and the lining may become dirty. We recommend you to apply emergency braking several times in a high speed range to remove dirt from the brake discs and brake linings, while ensuring that the following vehicles and other road users are not endangered.

#### Brake system failure

If you suddenly find the braking distance becomes longer or brake pedal stroke becomes longer, there may be a trouble in the braking system. In this case, the brake system warning light "(①)" is on, please stop immediately and seek professional help if safety conditions permit. Do not continue to drive the vehicle with the warning light on.

#### Over-heated brake

Never "slip rotation" the brake by lightly stepping on the brake pedal when braking is not required, which will cause the brake to overheat, extend the braking distance and raise wear. If the spoiler, wheel trim panel, and other relevant accessories are installed, it must be ensured that the airflow to the brake is not affected, otherwise, the brake will overheat.

# **Brake wear indicator**

All disc brakes are equipped with brake wear audible indicators. If a harsh "scream" sound is heard during driving (this is different from brake squeezing, which is usually caused by dust on the brake during gently braking), it indicates that the brake pad needs to be replaced.

# Hydraulic brake system:

The hydraulic braking system works by double circuits. If one of the lines fails, the other line will continue to work. In case of brake failure when only one line can be operated, drive to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV at low speed for inspection and maintenance. In this case, more force should be applied to the pedal to achieve normal braking effect.

# Servo assist system

The braking system is equipped with servo assist but is only available when the electronic booster is in normal operation. If it is not equipped with servo assistance, the greater pedal force needs to be applied to achieve safe control of the vehicle, resulting in a longer braking distance. Please pay attention to the following points

- Do not let the vehicle slide when the electronic booster fails.
- When the electronic booster fails and is towed, please be extra careful.

If the electronic booster fails while driving, please stop the vehicle as soon as safety conditions permit, and do not step on the brake pedal repeatedly to avoid losing the remaining servo assist force in the braking system.

# **∕**MARNING

Do not continue to drive the vehicle with the electronic booster faulty, as the brake servo may not be available at this time.

# Brake system fault warning light

When the "START/STOP" button is in the "RUN" mode, the brake system fault light "(①)" in the combination instrument lights up to perform the brake system self-inspection. After that, the brake system fault warning light goes out. If the brake system fault warning light does not go out or lights up during driving, it indicates that there is a fault in the brake system. At this time, it is necessary to check the brake fluid level. If the brake fluid level is normal, there are other faults in the brake system.

# **∱** WARNING

If the brake warning light lights up during driving, please stop immediately and seek professional help if safety conditions permit. Do not continue to drive the vehicle with the warning light on.

# **Brake control system (ABS)**

ABS anti-lock braking system can prevent wheels from being locked during braking. The purpose of ABS is to improve the active safety during driving. ABS will automatically adjust the brake pressure of each wheel. Before the wheel is about to lock up, the braking pressure will automatically decrease, and then raise the braking pressure until the wheel is about to lock up. The braking system's electronics get a signal from the wheel speed sensor, which accurately contains the time the wheel rolls. This information is processed continuously in order to adjust the brake pressure as accurately as possible. The braking pressure can be adjusted up to 12 times per second, but the ABS cannot be expected to shorten the braking distance in all cases. For example, on gravel roads or smooth roads that have just snowed, even if you drive carefully and slowly, the braking distance may still belona.

The fact is that vehicles equipped with ABS cannot be a reason to encourage drivers to take risky behaviors that endanger the safety of others or other road users. In all cases, it is the driver's responsibility to maintain a safe distance, taking due account of weather and traffic conditions. The function of Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is to prevent the wheels from being locked when braking, so that the driver can control the vehicle. During normal braking (sufficient road friction to ensure a reliable stop of the vehicle without locking the wheels), the ABS will not be activated. When the braking force exceeds the adhesion between the tire and the road surface. the wheels will be locked (e.g. on wet roads), and ABS automatically works, which can be felt through the rapid pulse vibration on the brake pedal.

# **∴** WARNING

Cornering braking at high speed or braking at high speed on slippery roads may make the vehicle out of control and dangerous, because even ABS can not overcome the physical limit of the vehicle.

# Working Mode of ABS Anti-lock Braking System

When the vehicle speed reaches about 20km/h, an automatic detection process is started. At this time, you can hear the running sound of the pump from the front engine room.

ABS cannot shorten the braking distance on gravel and snow-covered roads, however, it can still allow the driver to control the vehicle steering because the wheels will not be completely locked.

When the ABS works, you can feel the brake pedal jitter, accompanied by running noise, which is a normal phenomenon. If the speed of a wheel is too low relative to the vehicle speed and tends to lock up,

ABS will reduce the brake pressure on this wheel. To allow the ABS to adjust the brake pressure properly, the driver must floor the brake pedal, and do not pump the brake pedal.

If the road is slippery, ABS will be enabled even if the brake pedal is lightly pedaled, so that the driver can obtain road characteristic information and adjust his driving mode in time.

# **∱** WARNING

Always adjust the vehicle speed according to the climate, road and traffic conditions. To avoid accidents, do not risk driving depending on the limited safety function provided by the system.

- ABS cannot exceed the physical limits of road adhesion. Even if equipped with ABS, the safety of the vehicle when driving on wet and slippery roads is lower than that on normal roads. If you feel that ABS is adjusting the braking force during driving, you should immediately decrease to adapt to the current road and traffic conditions and be careful not to cause accidents!
- Improper operation or modification of vehicles (e.g improper operation or modification of power system, braking system, travel system or components affecting the performance of wheels and tires) may affect ABS.

# **↑** WARNING

- Assembling proper tires can ensure the normal function of ABS.
- The ABS cannot reduce the risk of accidents caused by high speed, short distance from the front vehicle and other improper driving style!

#### **Emergency brake**

In case of emergency, the driver should fully depress the brake pedal even if the road is quite slippery. The ABS will continuously monitor the wheel speed and adjust the brake pressure based on the available adhesion. This ensures that the vehicle can be stopped within the shortest distance without the wheels being locked.

#### **MARNING**

Do not press the brake pedal repeatedly at any time, which will interrupt the operation of ABS and may raise the braking distance.

#### Note

- On softer roads, such as snow or gravel, the braking distance under the anti-lock braking system may be longer than the braking distance without ABS.
- No matter how hard you press the brake pedal, you should continue to turn as usual as possible.
- Remember! Anti-lock braking always starts to operate only when the driver loses control. ABS can not make up for the driver's operation errors and inadequate experience.

#### **ABS** indicator light

ABS integrates a set of the monitoring system. When working, the system will regularly check whether all electrical components work normally.

When the "start/stop button" is in the "run" position, the anti-lock braking system (ABS) indicator light "((a))" in the combination instrument will light up, and the anti-lock braking system will start the self-inspection. After that, the indicator light will go out. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) indicator is not off or on during driving, it indicates

that there is a fault in the ABS braking system. If the warning light remains on, drive at low speed to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

In addition, when starting the drive motor, you may hear a "knock". You can feel very slight movements on the brake pedal. This is normal and indicates that the ABS is performing a self-test.

## **↑** WARNING

The braking system still works normally and is not affected by the loss of ABS function even when the ABS failed, however, the braking distance will raise correspondingly and energy recovery is disabled.

# **Brake priority**

Suppose that the electronic accelerator pedal is suddenly stuck during driving and the driver depresses the brake urgently, then the brake will override, and the power output of the vehicle is limited.

#### Note

If the brake switch, electronic accelerator pedal and other components are not original, or other changes are made without the approval of BJEV, the effective and reliable operation of the "Brake Override" function cannot be guaranteed, and the relevant matters have nothing to do with BJEV.

# **Brake lining**

The brake pads require running in for a period of time. Do not use emergency braking for the first 800 kilometers.

Keep in mind that regular maintenance is critical to ensure that brake system components are checked for wear at appropriate intervals and replaced as necessary to ensure long-term safety and optimal performance.

# Slippery conditions

While driving, driving over water or in heavy rain may adversely affect the braking system. Dry the brake by intermittently gently depressing the brake pedal, and ensure that you are at a safe braking distance from other road users when braking for the first time.

# Electronic brake force distribution system (EBD)

Electric Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system automatically adjusts the distribution proportion of braking force between front and rear axles to improve braking efficiency, shorten braking distance to a certain extent, and cooperate with ABS to improve braking stability.

For example, when the vehicle is lightly loaded, EBD will apply less braking force to the rear brake to maintain the stability of the vehicle. When the vehicle is fully loaded or towed, EBD will apply more braking force to the rear brake.

# Hill-start Assist\*

When the vehicle stopped on a slope, Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from sliding backward when the driver releases the brake pedal by delaying the release of the line pressure of the brake system. The driver has 1.5 seconds to 2 seconds to move his foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal and start. If the vehicle sideslip occurs during the ramp start assist, the brake line pressure will be immediately released to ensure control of the vehicle

# Traction control system (TCS)\*

Prevent the driving wheel from slipping when the vehicle starts and re-accelerates, so as to maintain the stability in the driving direction of the vehicle.

# Body electronic stability program (ESP)

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system can improve the driving stability of the vehicle. For example, it can reduce the risk of vehicle sideslipping during accelerating and curve driving.

The ESP system integrates Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD), Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) and Traction Control System (TCS).

## **ESP** indicator light

When the "Start / Stop Button" is in the "run" position, the ESP indicator light " ? in the combination instrument lights up, and the ESP system starts self inspection. After that, the indicator light goes out. If the ESP indicator light does not go out or remains on during driving, it indicates that there is a fault in the ESP system. If the warning light remains on, drive at low speed to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

If the ESP indicator light "\(\frac{\pi}{2}\)" of the combination instrument flashes during driving, it indicates that the ESP system is currently performing stability adjustment.

#### **ESP function OFF**



Figure - ESP OFF Button position

Each time the vehicle is started, the ESP function will start automatically.

Press the ESP off button to turn off the ESP function. At this time, the ESP OFF indicator light "  $\stackrel{\triangle}{\not\leftarrow}$  " on the combination instrument will light up.

Press the ESP off button again to start the ESP function. At this time, the ESP off indicator light " on the combination instrument will go out.

In special cases, the ESP function should be deactivated, for example:

- When the vehicle is driven with snow chains.
- When driving on deep snowy or spongy road surfaces.
- When the vehicle is stuck in a muddy road and needs to move back and forth.

### **↑** WARNING

ESP has certain limitations in controlling the driving stability of the vehicle and the driving mode should be adjusted according to the road conditions and traffic conditions at any time even if the vehicle is equipped with ESP. This is especially important for driving on smooth and wet roads. Do not drive at risk just because this system improves the stability of the vehicle, otherwise there will be a risk of accidents!

### HDC (Hill Descent Control system)\*

Hill Descent Control system (HDC) is to enhance the braking capacity of the vehicle at low speed and is suitable for driving at low speed and is convenient for driving down a steep slope with poor road conditions. It allows the driver not to depress the brake pedal, just concentrate on driving.



Figure-Hill Descent Control System Switch Button

Just turn on the switch of the HDC system before going down the steep slope and release the accelerator and brake pedal at this time, and the HDC system will start to work; When the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the HDC system will immediately turn off and the vehicle is under the

control of driver again.

Hill Descent Control Activation Conditions:

- HDC Switch ON:
- The vehicle speed is lower than 35km/h.
- The vehicle is not stationary;
- No excessive accelerator pedal opening;
- Downhill detected.

## **↑** WARNING

- Hill Descent Control does not work in all conditions and is designed to be used as an aid only.
- The driver should always bear the ultimate responsibility for ensuring the safe driving of the vehicle.
- Press the HDC button, the vehicle is driving on a flat road or uphill, and the HDC will not be activated; Once downhill is detected, the function is automatically reactivated.

## **∕** WARNING

Generally, the maximum inclination of asphalt pavement is 50%, which depends on road conditions, tires, and driving conditions.

On steeper slopes, HDC does not automatically switch off.

# Electronic Parking Brake System (EPB)



Figure - Electronic Parking Brake Switch Location Manually apply electronic parking:

When the vehicle is stationary, pull up the electronic parking brake switch to tighten the parking brake, that is, apply the parking brake, and the indicator light on the switch and the parking brake indicator light "(P)" in the combination instrument come on

Automatically apply electronic parking:

With the vehicle in any gear and the "START/STOP" button set to the "OFF" mode, the vehicle will park automatically.

Secondary application of electronic parking: In some special cases, such as the vehicle detects that there is risk of sliding or the brake disc temperature is too high at this time, the brake caliper can realize the automatic secondary clighting with the vehicle parked by turning the "START/STOP" button to the "RUN" mode.

Manual release of electronic parking:

When the parking brake is released, press the brake pedal when the "start/stop button" is in "RUN" mode, and press the parking brake switch at the same time, the indicator light "((P))"on the switch and the indicator light "(P))"in the combination meter off.

Automatic release of electronic parking:

With the "START/STOP" button in the "RUN" mode, the driver seat belt fastened, all doors closed, and there is no need to release the EPB manually, but just depress the accelerator pedal and the built-in HHC system can automatically release the parking brake when the vehicle starts, providing convenience for your driving.

# i Hint

Make sure that the driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are all closed, otherwise the automatic release function of electronic parking cannot be realized.

#### Note

Under some special circumstances, If an electronic parking brake is not needed for parking, you can press the brake pedal and press the parking brake switch for a long time before turning off the "Start/Stop button". The indicator light on the switch flashes releases the brake pedal, turns off the ignition switch, and releases the electronic parking switch to release the electronic parking brake.

In addition to the functions of traditional parking brake, the EPB also provides unique comfort, convenient and safety functions.

- Hill-start Assist
- The Hill-start Assist system prevents the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally when starting uphill. The braking force of the parking brake is only released when sufficient driving force is developed on the wheels.
- 2. Emergency Brake Function
- This function is used when the ordinary brake control mechanism has failed or is locked. Pull up the parking brake switch to brake the vehicle in an emergency. As soon as the switch is released, the braking process can be stopped.
- The dynamic braking function is activated when the parking brake button is pulled and held stationary at a vehicle speed from 5km/h.

Note: When taking emergent braking.

- The parking indicator light "(D)" in the instrument is always on;
- The brake tail light is on;

## **∱** WARNING

The dynamic braking function should only be activated in emergencies where the foot brake fails or the brake pedal is blocked. Neither EPB nor ABS can transcend the laws of physics. On roads with large camber, poor road surface, or in winter, the maximum braking may cause the vehicle to swing its tail or sideslip, which is in danger of accidents.

## i Hint

- In a humid and corrosive environment, if you want to stop for a long time, it is recommended to stop on the flat ground to prevent the vehicle from starting difficult or unable to start due to the rust adhesion between the brake disc and the brake pad.
- Before the vehicle is transported, after parking, pull the switch for 3S to make the EPB clamp again, to prevent the vehicle from sliding slope during transportation.

## **AUTO HOLD system (AVH)**



Figure – Automatic parking switch position

AVH is AUTOHOLD, that is, when the vehicle stops with the motor running for a long period of time, such as on a slope, at a traffic light or in a stop-go state, there is no need to depress the brake pedal or pull up the EPB switch if the AUTOHOLD conditions are met.

#### Standby Mode

Place the "start/stop button" in the "run" mode, the driver's door is closed, the driver's safety belt is fastened, and the driver touches the AVH switch. At this time, the AVH switch indicator lights up and the AVH enters the standby state (the function is not activated).

#### Note

- If the conditions such as "door closed", "seat belt fastened" are not met or any of them is disturbed, the vehicle will exit standby mode.
- After the vehicle stalls, power on the AVH button to continue the previous cycle.
- When operating the AVH switch, ensure that the vehicle voltage is normal.

#### **Execution mode**

With the AVH function standby, the vehicle in D and the vehicle speed greater than 0km/h, you can depress the brake pedal to decrease the vehicle to 0km/h to allow the AVH to be active. At this time, release the brake pedal, the AUTOHOLD function works, and the AUTOHOLD indicator light

" (A)" (green) on the combination instrument comes on. There is no need to depress the brake pedal or pull up the EPB switch.

#### Note

 If the conditions such as "door closed", "seat belt fastened" are not met or any of them is disturbed, the vehicle will be taken over by EPB.

#### Static automatic release

When the AVH function of the vehicle is activated, if it needs to start automatically, the following conditions must be met:

- Brake pedal release state;
- The vehicle is stationary (speed is 0km/h);
- The vehicle is in the starting gear (forward gear);
- Belt the driver's safety belt;
- The driver's door is closed;
- The vehicle operating voltage is normal.

If the above conditions are met, press the accelerator pedal, and AVH does not need other relevant operations. At this time, the wheel edge pressure is released, the vehicle starts automatically, the automatic parking indicator light " (③)" (green) of the combination instrument goes out, and AVH enters the standby state.

# **Steering System**

# Electrical power steering system (EPS)

The electric power steering system only works when the power system enters the start state or the complete vehicle is in the "run" state.

The electric power steering system is a non-hydraulic steering system and is composed of mechanical components and motors. One of its advantages is that it no longer needs hydraulic components such as hoses, fluid tank, filters and hydraulic fluid. In addition, the system is more efficient.

EPS automatically adjusts the steering power according to the vehicle speed, steering wheel angle and torque acting on the steering wheel.

# Overheating protection of electric power steering system

When parking or driving at very low speed, if the steering wheel is operated repeatedly or continuously, the EPS system will reduce the steering power to prevent the system from overheating and protect the system from damage. At this time, the steering power decreases and the steering wheel operation becomes more laborious. If this

operation is continued, the electric power steering system will enter the thermal protection mode, and the steering wheel will become very laborious to turn (turn the steering wheel at this time, the EPS fault light will be on, and go out when turning stopped). After the system temperature drops, the booster will gradually return to normal

# The indicator light lights up

After turning on the "Start/Stop button", the indicator light should be on for several seconds.

If the indicator light Idoes not go out or light up during driving, it indicates that there is a fault with the EPS system. At this time, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to check the steering system as soon as possible.

Remember! if the steering assist function decreases or fails, the steering wheel must be turned with much greater force than normal steering.

The steering assist function does not work when the powertrain is turned off (for example, when the vehicle is being towed).

## **↑** WARNING

- Be sure to strictly follow the instructions of warning lights and warning instructions, otherwise, it may cause casualties or damage to vehicles.
- Do not turn off the power system when the vehicle is driving, otherwise, it may cause accidents! The vehicle cannot turn because the steering column may be suddenly locked. It is very easy to cause traffic accidents!
- If the steering assist function fails or does not work, it will be very difficult to turn the steering wheel, which will seriously affect driving safety.
- Do not turn off the power system start mode to make the vehicle coasting!

# i Hint

When turning the steering wheel back and forth, the electric power steering system may produce working noise, which is a normal phenomenon.

# Panoramic image system (AVM)\*

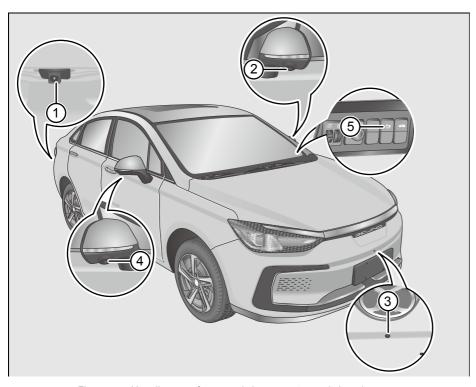


Figure - position diagram of panoramic image system switch and camera

The panoramic image system consists of the following five parts and controllers, as shown in the left figure:

- 1. Panorama rear-view camera
- Panorama left-view camera
- 3. Panorama front-view camera
- Panorama right-view camera
- 5. Panoramic image system switch

The controller seamlessly splices the images of the four cameras arranged around the vehicle body to form a 360  $^{\circ}$  around view, whose display effect is similar to the image taken from the air, and can present the image around the vehicle body by 360  $^{\circ}$ .

## **General Introduction**

The Around View Monitor (AVM) is a comfort system, which is composed of four CMOS wide-angle cameras installed around the vehicle body and a AVM system controller. AVM can assist the driver to have a clear view around the vehicle when reversing, parking or turning, so as to expand the driver's field of vision and assist the driver in driving. The system can display not only panoramic images but also single views in any direction at the same time.

AVM includes the following main functions:

- 360°panoramic image
- Blind Spot Monitoring System (BSD)
- Low-speed moving objective Identification

#### **Prerequisites for operating AVM:**

- · Unfolding of outside rearview mirror
- All doors and trunk lids must be closed in place;
- The surface of the camera is clean and cannot be covered by snow, water, frost, mud, dust and other objects;
- The driver must be familiar with this system;
- The camera area of the car must be undamaged. When the position or installation angle of the camera has changed (for example, after an accident), Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.

# **⚠ WARNING**

- Since the system is equipped with fish-eye camera, there may be distortion on displayed object.
- The panoramic image system has a blind spot of vision at a distance of 20cm around the body, and the driver should judge the surrounding environment in a variety of ways.
- The AVM is only used as a driver assistant system, not the only judgment standard. The image display is for reference only, and the driver shall bear the corresponding responsibility for the accident caused by the driver's improper driving!
- When exterior rear-view mirror fails to expand to true position, please don't use full-view image system. When the system is used to operate car, both back door and front door shall be full closed in place.

# **↑** WARNING

- Object distance displayed on fullview image interface may be different from that subjectively felt, especially when the object is close to car. Given this, a driver shall determine distance between his car and object by multiple means.
- The camera is installed above the front bumper, exterior rearview mirror, and rear license plate.
   Please keep camera not obstructed.
- When washing the car body with high-pressure water, try to avoid washing the camera directly, so as not to affect the performance of the camera. If there is water or dust on the camera, wipe it clean in time.
- Do not tap the camera in any way, which will cause the camera to malfunction or damage.

# **AVM** system switch



Figure-Hard switch position of panoramic image The left dashboard is equipped with a panoramic image system switch. Press the ON button to turn on the panoramic imaging system. When the system starts, press the ON button again to turn off the panoramic image system.

# AVM system opening and closing conditions

If any of the following conditions are met, you can enter the panoramic image system:

- When the power mode is "RUN" gear, the whole vehicle is put into "R" gear;
- · When the power mode is "RUN", and

- the speed is lower than 15km/h, press the hard switch of panoramic image;
- When the power mode is "RUN", you can enter the panoramic image through voice commands.

If any of the following conditions is met, AVM exits:

- Engage "P" gear for 5 seconds;
- When it is not in "R" gear, press the button in the lower right corner of the display screen;
- When it is not in "R" gear, the driving speed is greater than 15km/h;
- When it is not in "R" gear, the panoramic image hard switch is pressed;
- Switch the power mode to "OFF" and "ACC" modes;
- When it is not in "R" gear, the panoramic image can be exited by a voice command.

# Panoramic image interface operation

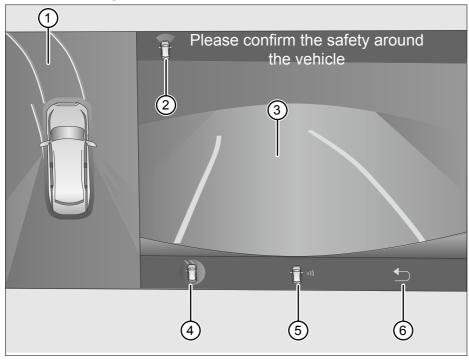


Figure-Panoramic image interface

After entering the panoramic image interface, the central control display screen interface will display the left and right split-screen interface.

- 1. Panoramic image area
- 2. View ID
- One-sided image display area
- . Dynamic trajectory switch
- MOD switch (when gray, MOD function is unavailable)
- Return button

In reverse mode, the rear view + panoramic view is displayed. Touch the front, rear left, and right areas of the vehicle in the panoramic view to switch to the single-sided view where the area is located. Vehicles in the touch panorama view can be switched to a 3D presentation view.

#### Note

The panoramic image system may not be available in low light conditions.

# Panoramic image system interface switching operation



Figure-Front view

When a system other than reverse mode system is started, the default screen of the system is front view + panorama, which can be switched to other views through shifting, turn signal or touching screen.

# Panoramic image interface in forward low speed mode

In forward low-speed mode (0km/h-15km/h), the front view + panorama view is displayed by default. When the left/right turn signal is turned on, the panorama view will switch to the corresponding left view and right view.

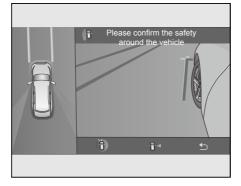


Figure-left view

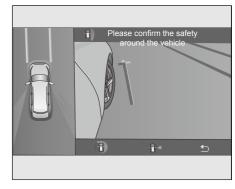


Figure-right view

# Guides of panoramic image system

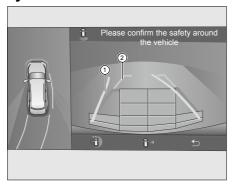


Figure-guides of panoramic image system

- 1. dynamic guides
- 2. Static guides

When the vehicle is in R gear, the default screen is the rear view, in which dynamic and static guides are integrated. When the steering wheel is not turned, the dynamic trajectory line coincides with the static trajectory line. When turning the steering wheel, the dynamic guide line will calculate the vehicle trajectory according to the steering wheel angle to assist the driver in parking.

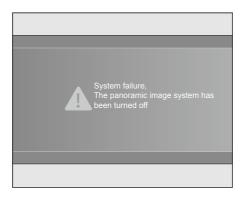


Figure - Panoramic image system failure display When the panoramic imaging system is turned on, if the system detects fault information, the central control display will display a text prompt.

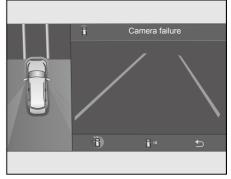


Figure - Camera failure display

When the panoramic imaging system is turned on, if the system detects a camera failure, the central control display will display a text prompt.

# Blind Spot Monitoring System (BSD)\*

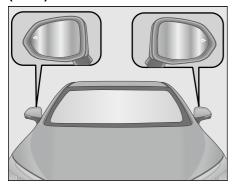


Figure - picture of exterior mirrors

Use the side camera to detect the blind spot of the rearview mirror. When a driving vehicle is detected in the blind spot set by the system, the blind spot detection indicator of the rearview mirror comes on. And when the driver turns on the turn signal on the corresponding side simultaneously (the system judges that the driver has the intention to change lanes), the system gives an alarm.

#### Start and Close

Opening conditions:

When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode or the vehicle is started, any of the following conditions can be met to start:

- When the vehicle speed is greater than 30km/h;
- Host security settings interface to set.
   Closing conditions:

When BSD is turned on, any of the following conditions can be met to exit:

- The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.
- Host security settings interface to set.

#### Alarm mode

When the system detects a moving vehicle, it can provide LED lighting visual alarm, and sound alarm.

# **Detection range**

- The system can only identify 4-wheeled vehicles;
- The system can only identify the driving vehicles whose relative speed is-10
   30km/h with the user's vehicle:
- The system does not give an alarm to the vehicles traveling in the opposite direction;
- The system can only identify the area 3\*3m behind the vehicle;
- The system may detect vehicles outside the adjacent lane.

#### System setting



Figure- Central Control Display: Blind Spot Monitoring Setting Interface

User can configure Blind Low Speed Moving Objective Identification (MOD) on the center console display interface\*

# **↑** WARNING

Blind-spot monitoring systems do not completely replace the driver's judgment. Before changing lanes, you must pay attention to all rearview mirrors, pay attention to the surrounding environment and use turn signals

As a driver, it is your responsibility to ensure the safety of lane change.

Blind area obstacles may not be detected under the following conditions:

- Vehicles outside the blind spot approach quickly.
- Pedestrians, non-motor vehicles or animals.

# **. WARNING**

- You must be very careful when changing lanes This function is only used to help the driver drive safely and not a driving safety system, only used to make up the shortcomings of the rear-view mirror and cannot replace the driver.
- When the camera is covered by rain, snow, mud, ice, snow, etc., this function will cause false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.
- When in the night, rain, snow, fog, shadow, and other environments, this function will have false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.

# Low-speed moving objective Identification (MOD)\*

AVM can recognize moving objects in the camera image. And when the system detects moving objects in the image, it will give corresponding prompts to remind the driver that there are moving objects around the vehicle and to drive carefully.

#### Start and Close

When the panoramic system is turned on/ off, the low-speed moving objective Identification function is turned on/off.

When the system detects a moving object, a red triangle is displayed in the corresponding area of the panoramic image for reminding.



Figure-Low Speed Moving Object Identification Interface

- The smallest object that the system can detect is an object with a height of about 50cm \* width of about 20cm.
- The system can only detect objects within about 3.5 meters before and after the car body and about 2 meters left and right, excluding the blind area of the camera.
- This function is disabled when the vehicle speed is not 0.

# i Hint

- This function is only used to help drivers drive safely, and does not belong to the vehicle driving safety system. It only plays an auxiliary role and cannot replace the driver's control.
- When the camera is covered by rain, snow, mud, ice, snow, etc., this function will cause false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.
- When in the night, rain, snow, fog, shadow, and other environments, this function will have false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.

# Lane departure warning system (LDW)\*

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) can be used for lane line detection. When it is detected that the vehicle deviates from its lane and there is no turn signal command for the corresponding direction (the system determines that the driver has no intention to change the lane), the system sends an icon visual alarm and a continuous audible alarm to remind the driver that the vehicle is deviating from the lane and to drive carefully.

# i Hint

- This function is only used to help drivers drive safely, and does not belong to the vehicle driving safety system. It only plays an auxiliary role and cannot replace the driver's control.
- When the camera is covered by rain, snow, mud, ice, snow, etc., this function will cause false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.

# i Hint

- When in the night, rain, snow, fog, shadow, and other environments. this function will have false positives and omissions. Please drive carefully.
- For temporary road construction or marking, false positives and omissions will occur in this function.
- If there is water or cracks on the road surface, this function will cause false positives and omissions.
- If the instrument indicates that "the camera is covered", please turn on the wiper to clean the front windshield and restart the vehicle. If the fault still exists, please go to the special distributor of Beigi New Energy for inspection and repair.
- Please drive carefully when the lane line is unclear!

# ON and OFF of lane departure warning system

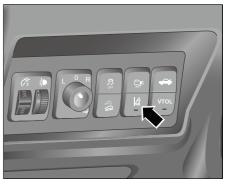


Figure -ON and OFF of lane departure warning system button

The Lane Departure Warning (LDW) ON/ OFF key is located in the switch group on the left side of the instrument. When the LDW ON key is pressed, the switch indicator light comes on.

With the function activated, if the sensor recognizes the lane lines on both sides, the lane lines are filled in white (if one lane line is recognized, the corresponding side is filled, and if neither side is recognized, none is filled).

When the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode or the vehicle has started, the LDW switch is on, and the vehicle speed is greater than 60km/h, the LDW function is turned on.

- When LDW is turned on, any of the following conditions can be met to exit:
- The vehicle speed is less than 55km/h or more than 180km/h;
- ABS or ESP function activated.
- Press the LDW ON button:
- When the lane width is less than 2.5 meters.

# i Hint

When the vehicle is in the backlight or switched ambient light, the LDW system will prompt that the front camera is blocked, and will recover automatically after a while.

# System setting

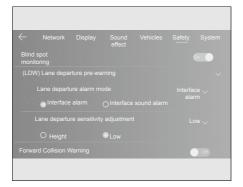


Figure-Central Control Display: Lane Departure Warning Setting InterfaceFigure- Central Control Display: Blind Spot Monitoring Setting Interface

Users can set LDW alarm mode and alarm sensitivity in the central control display interface.

## Alarm mode



Figure-Lane Departure Display Interface

When the system detects the change of vehicle state, the corresponding lane will change color. Lane color and corresponding vehicle status are as follows:

- The lane is not identified and the lane is gray;
- The lane has been identified and not deviated, and the lane is white;
- The lane has been identified and deviated, and the lane is red.

When the driver's intention to deviate from the lane is detected, the system prohibits giving an alarm.

#### LDW sensitivity description

LDW sensitivity refers to the sensitivity of LDW alarm. And under high sensitivity. there are fewer conditions to suppress the alarm, while under low sensitivity, there are more conditions to suppress the alarm.

High sensitivity suppression conditions:

- The vehicle deviates from the direction and turns on the turn indicator light:
- The emergency alarm indicator lamp is turned on:
- ESP or ABS intervention:
- Crossing the lane line guickly and continuously;
- Curve riding drive:
- Lane consolidation
- Strong braking;

In addition to the suppression conditions of high sensitivity, the suppression conditions of low sensitivity also include the following suppression conditions:

- Sharp turn (too high turning rate)
- Pressed the accelerator hard

# Intelligent High Beam Assist (HMA)\*

The intelligent high beam assist system (HMA) judges the current driving environment through the camera sensor, detects the taillights of the vehicle ahead, the headlights and street lights of the oncoming vehicle, and automatically turns on and off the high beams. When the driving road environment is dark and there are no vehicles and street lamps in front, this function automatically starts the high beam; On the contrary, the high beam is released.

### System setting



Figure-Central Control Display: Intelligent High Beam Auxiliary Setting Interface

With the function turned on, when the light is set to high beam, the light switch is in AUTO, the ray of light meets the conditions, and the vehicle speed is greater than about 57km/h, the system will automatically switch between low beam and high beam in accordance with the current driving environment. When the function is activated, the instrument cluster will light up the intelligent high beam auxiliary system icon <u>■</u> (exit speed is less than about 27km/h).

When the light switch rotates to the non-AUTO position, the function enters the standby state, no longer automatically starts, and the high beam is released.

Even after this function is turned on, the driver can manually switch the high beam and low beam lights.

# **↑** WARNING

- Drivers always have the responsibility to manually switch high beam and low beam lights according to traffic and weather conditions.
- HMA system is an auxiliary function, which cannot be guaranteed to be applicable to all driving situations. The driver must control and drive the vehicle carefully.
- When the vehicle is in a highly dynamic state, such as ABS or ESP activation, the light change will be suppressed.
- When the driver turns on the fog lights, turn signals or makes an emergency turn, the light change will be suppressed.

# **↑** WARNING

The system needs manual control under the following working conditions or road sections:

- Driving in heavy rain, dense fog, heavy snow or sludge;
- There are pedestrians on or beside the road. When you meet a bicycle.
- During sharp turns, the system may not turn off the high beams if oncoming lights are blocked (such as a barrier).

# i Hint

With HMA standby in the daytime, the instrument may prompt that the HMA function is not available during driving against the light. And after that, the system will recover automatically; If it fails to recover for a long period of time, contact the authorized dealer of BJEV for inspection.

# Limitations of intelligent high beam assist:

HMA uses the camera unit, but usually with certain limitations. And under the following circumstances, it may be necessary to manually switch between high beam and low beam:

- The use of second-hand or non BJEV genuine windshield will cause an adverse impact on HMA;
- Driving in fog or heavy rain;
- Driving on snowy weather or muddy roads;
- 4. Driving in the bright moonlight;
- 5. Driving in freezing and rainy weather;
- Driving in a dimly lit street;
- 7. There are pedestrians on the driving road or adjacent roads;
- 8. There are signs and other reflectors near the road;
- The lights of oncoming vehicles are blocked by fences, shrubs, isolation belts, etc;
- 10. Driving on hilltops or potholes in roads;
- 11. Driving on sharp corner bend.

# Constant cruise control\*

# General description

The cruise control system is a system that uses electronic program to control the target torque of driving motor to make the vehicle automatically run at a constant speed. The use of the cruise control during long-distance driving on the expressway allows the driver to keep the vehicle running at the set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal, so as to reduce driving fatique and improve driving comfort.

## 

- When driving on roads with heavy traffic, in windy areas, on bumpy roads, rain, snow, ice covered and other slippery roads, do not use the cruise control, so as to prevent the vehicle from getting out of control and causing accidents.
- The set speed and the vehicle-to-vehicle distance must be adapted to the current traffic conditions. The cruise control is only a parking assist system. Use the cruise control with extra care.
- Be sure to deactivate the cruise control after using it.

# Constant cruise button

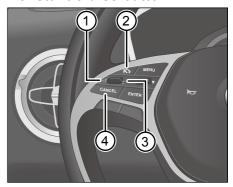


Figure- multifunction steering wheel + constant cruise button

- RES/+: Increase or restore the set speed button
- 2. Cruise control master switch
- SET/-: decrease or set speed button
- Release the set speed button

# **Setting speed**

- 1. Press the "\(\circ\)" button of the switch, and the cruise function is turned on. At this time, the gray cruise indicator light \(\circ\) in the combination instrument lights up.
- Raise the vehicle speed to the cruising starting speed (not less than 30km/h).
- 3. Turn down the cruise setting key "SET" to set the vehicle to cruise at the current speed, and the cruise indicator in the instrument will turn on for a long time. If the speed memory is not cleared, toggle the cruise recovery button "RES" upwards, and the last memory speed cruise will be restored.
- Release the accelerator pedal and the vehicle enters the cruise control state.

# Restore the set speed

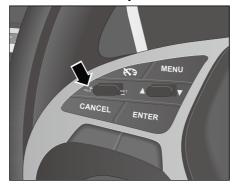


Figure- multifunction steering wheel + constant cruise button

After the cruise is temporarily released, when the vehicle speed is higher than 30km / h, move the "XXX" button upward, the green cruise indicator of the combination instrument will light up, and the vehicle speed will return to the speed memory value set for the last cruise and maintain the vehicle speed. Toggle the "SET" button down to cruise at the current speed.

# Speed up when using constant speed cruise

In constant speed cruise, toggle the "RES" button up to raise the cruise speed:

- Turn the cruise speed setting button "RES" upwards to raise the cruise target speed by 1km/h.
- Press and hold the cruise speed setting key "RES" upward, and the speed will continue to raise but not higher than 155km / h. release the key to realize automatic cruise according to the newly set speed.

# Slow down when cruising at constant speed

In constant speed cruise, toggle the "SET" button down to lower the cruise speed:

- Turn the cruise speed setting button "SET" downward to lower the cruise target speed by 1km/h.
- Press and hold the cruise speed setting key "SET" downward, and the speed will continue to lower but not lower than 155km / h. release the key to realize automatic cruise according to the newly set speed.

# i Hint

When the energy regeneration is limited, such as when the battery is fully charged, the deceleration time of cruise control may be longer than that when it is not limited due to the limited negative torque.

# Overtaking while using cruise control

If you are overtaking, press the accelerator pedal to accelerate and exceed the cruising speed (same as normal overtaking). After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will gradually return to the previously set cruising speed.

# Use cruise control on ramps

The performance of the cruise control system on the ramp depends on the vehicle speed, load and the gradient of the ramp. When climbing steep slopes, you may need to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the speed. When driving a vehicle downhill, you may need to brake to keep the speed. When the brakes are activated, the constant speed cruise will be interrupted.

# Stop the constant cruise control

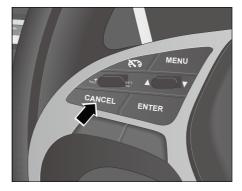


Figure- multifunction steering wheel + constant cruise button

The following operations will temporarily cancel the current cruise, but the vehicle speed memory will not be cleared. At this time, the gray cruise indicator (3) in the combination instrument does not flash.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- The vehicle is in neutral.
- Press the "CANCEL" button.
- When ABS is working.
- Gear change (D/S gear switching).

EPB is in braking.

### Hint

When the actual vehicle speed continues to be lower than the target vehicle speed (about 5km / h) for about 60 seconds, it may cause the exit of a constant speed cruise.

# Turn off cruise control / clear vehicle speed memory

When the cruise function is on, press the "to" button of the constant speed cruise master switch to exit the cruise control. At this time, the green cruise indicator light of the combination instrument goes out and the cruise speed memory is cleared.

# Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)

# **General description**

The function of Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC) is to detect the relative distance and speed between the vehicle ahead and your vehicle on the basis of traditional cruise control, and actively control the vehicle speed, so as to achieve the purpose of automatic following and cruise. According to whether there is a vehicle ahead, the system can automatically switch between constant cruise and car-following cruise.

Using ACC system, you can make your vehicle follow the vehicle ahead within the speed range of 0  $\sim$  150km/h, and cruise at a constant speed within the range of 30  $\sim$  150km/h. And also you can set the time distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

## **↑** WARNING

- ACC is not a safety system, obstacle detector or collision warning system, but a comfort system. The driver must always control the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- ACC function can assist the driver, but it cannot drive instead of the driver. Even if ACC is active, drivers must drive carefully and obey traffic rules.
- ACC is suitable for use on expressways and good roads, but not on complex urban roads or mountain roads.
- Do not use ACC in extreme weather (such as fog, rain, snow, hail, etc.), slippery roads, steep slopes or bends.
- Towing the trailer will reduce the dynamic performance of ACC.

# **⚠ WARNING**

- The driver must adjust the following distance and reasonably set the ACC system according to the traffic flow ahead and the current weather conditions, such as rain and snow. Drivers need to monitor vehicles in real-time and ensure vehicle safety.
- In some cases (the relative speed of the preceding vehicle is too high, lane change is too fast, or the safe distance is too small, etc.) the system does not have enough time to reduce the relative speed. In this case, the driver must respond appropriately, and the system cannot give an audible or visual warning in every case.
- The ACC system may make the vehicle run away automatically after a short stop, during which, the driver must ensure that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants in front of the vehicle.

## **↑** WARNING

- It is the driver's duty to keep the distance from the car in front. Drivers should keep proper distance according to the environmental conditions.
- When ACC works, if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver. The distance control function of ACC system will not be activated.
- ACC only works on vehicles ahead traveling in the same direction in your lane, not on oncoming/crossing/stationary or slow-moving vehicles, and not on pedestrians, animals and other objects on the road.
- For security reasons, ACC cannot be activated when ESP is not turned on.
- Do not use ACC when driving in roadless areas or dirt roads, but only on hard roads.

## **MARNING**

- If the preceding vehicle brakes suddenly (emergency stop), there is a risk that the ACC will not be able to react or react too slowly to the preceding vehicle, resulting in too late braking. In this case, the driver will not receive a takeover request.
- If the ACC vehicle comes too close to the adjacent lane (or the vehicle in adjacent lane is too close to the lane of ACC vehicle), ACC may respond to that vehicle and apply brake.
- ACC can apply a maximum braking force of about 40% of the vehicle braking capacity. If your vehicle with ACC ON is too close to the vehicle ahead, it will trigger the request alarm to control the vehicle. At the same time, the combination instrument will give an alarm continuously, at which the driver must immediately control the vehicle and take collision avoidance measures to avoid danger.

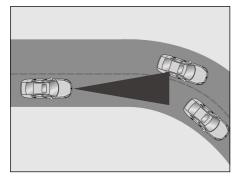
### **↑** WARNING

- Radar sensors are installed in the front area of the vehicle. It should be noted that the sensor cannot be blocked or stained to interfere with its function. Especially when the sensor is completely covered with snow, the system will exit. The system will transmit the system exit information to the driver through the man-machine interface.
- ACC system is subject to the limitations of radar sensor, may brake unnecessarily or not. And the driver is responsible for taking braking measures actively if braking is required immediately.

The radar may not detect the target vehicle or the detection time may be late in the following situations:

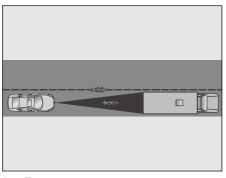
#### 1. Curve

When the vehicle is driving through a curve, the radar may not detect the vehicle ahead in the lane, or detect the vehicle in the adjacent lane.



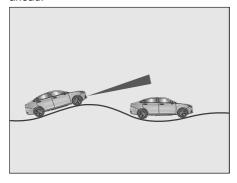
#### 2. Forward Narrow vehicle

Radar may not be able to detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.

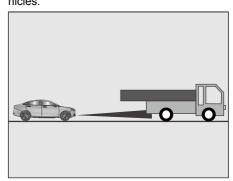


## 3. Ramp

When the vehicle enters a ramp, the radar may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead.

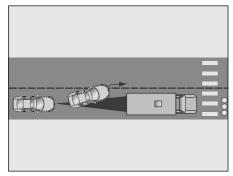


4. Vehicles with special loads / equipment The radar cannot detect the objects or accessories loaded on the vehicle ahead beyond its side, rear end and roof. The driver shall be careful, take emergency measures if necessary, and temporarily turn off the ACC function when following the vehicle ahead loaded with the above special items or accessories or when overtaking such vehicles



#### 5. Forward standing vehicles

The radar cannot recognize the stationary vehicle ahead.

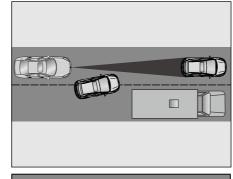


#### Drive through a tunnel

The radar sensor can not work normally when the car travels in the tunnel, so do not use this function when the car travels in the tunnel.

#### 7. Other vehicles change lanes

When a vehicle in an adjacent lane merges into your lane, but not enter the detection range in front of your vehicle, the radar sensor may not detect that vehicle, resulting in delayed ACC response.



#### Note

During ACC activation, system braking may make a sound. This phenomenon is normal, so you can use it with confidence.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Towing the trailer will reduce the dynamic performance of ACC. Structural modification of vehicles (such as lowering chassis height, changing vehicle front license plate mounting plate, etc.) may reduce ACC performance and even make ACC unusable.
- The ACC system will cause EU5 braking during operation when braking is not required or when you do not intend to do so. This may be due to the detection of vehicles or objects in adjacent lanes (especially on corners).
- ACC function cannot cover all driving scenes, traffic, weather and road conditions. Even if ACC is activated, the driver must drive carefully and obey the traffic rules. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

## Adaptive cruise button

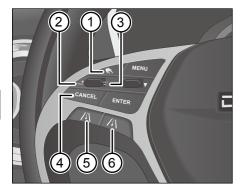


Figure - Part of the multi-function steering wheel: adaptive cruise button

- 1. Adaptive cruise master switch.
- RES/+: Restore ACC function/raise car following speed.
- SET/-: Activate ACC function/Reduce car following speed
- 4. Release the set speed button
- 5. DIST +: Add distance button.
- 6. DIST-: Reduce the distance button.

# ACC system activation condition

To activate ACC, the following conditions must be met at the same time (not limited to the following conditions):

- Open the adaptive cruise control button;
- The gear is in the forward gear;
- The vehicle is in a "READY" state;
- Parking brake is not turned on;
- The brake pedal is not pressed;
- ESP switch is not turned off;
- The vehicle runs stably and the EPB system is not involved;
- Brake temperature is not too high due to frequent braking;
- The driver's door and front cabin cover are not opened;
- · Radar is not blocked;
- The driver's seat belt is not unfastened;
- 0 ≤ vehicle speed ≤ 150km/h

## **ACC** system release condition

ACC is released if any of the following conditions are met:

- Press the master switch;
- Stop following the car for more than 10 minutes;
- Press the release button Cancel:
- Slip behind the vehicle after it has stopped;
- The driver continues to depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes;
- ABS, ESP and other interventions;
- Activation conditions are not met:

## **Button Description**

ACC on/off: press the master switch and ACC enters the standby mode. At this time, the cruise indicator and in the combination instrument lights up (the indicator is white when ACC is standby and green when activated).

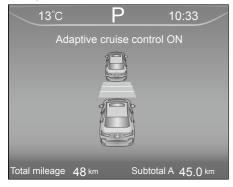


Figure - combination instrument: adaptive cruise start interface

SET/-: in the standby state of ACC, press the "SET/-" button. If the current speed is ≥ 30 km/h, set the current speed as the target speed and activate ACC; If the current vehicle speed is less than or equal to 30km/ h, set 30km/h as the target vehicle speed and activate ACC. With ACC ON, press the

"SET/-" button, and the cruise speed will raise in 5 km/h increment (when pressing "SET/-" for the first time, the target speed raises to the nearest multiple of 5 first (for example, from 43 km/h to 40 km/h)); Pressing and holding the "SET/-" button for 1s to raise the cruise speed by 1 km/h/s, and the instrument displays the updated target speed information in real time.

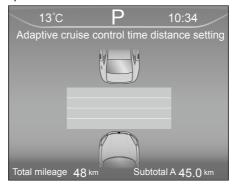


Figure - Combination Instrument: Adaptive Cruise Time Distance Setting Interface

RES/+: In the standby state of ACC, pressing the "RES/+" key will reactivate the ACC function according to the previously set speed (prerequisite: ACC is not activated for the first time after the vehicle is powered on). With ACC ON, press the "RES/+" button, and the cruise speed will raise in 5 km/ h increment (when pressing "RES/+" for the first time, the target speed raises to the nearest multiple of 5 first (for example, from 43 km/h to 45 km/h)); Pressing and holding the "RES/+" button for 1s to raise the cruise speed by 1 km/h/s, and the instrument displays the updated target speed information in real time.

DIST-: with ACC ON, press this button to lower the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

DIST+: with ACC ON, press this button to raise the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. The inter-vehicle time interval is divided into four gears: 1.0 seconds, 1.5 seconds, 1.9 seconds, and 2.3 seconds. Every time the start switch is turned on, the default inter-vehicle time interval is 1.9 seconds.

#### i Hint

During the following control process, the following time distance is displayed in three colors: green, yellow and red. Green indicates that the actual following distance is basically the same as the set value. Yellow indicates that the actual value is close to the set value, and red indicates that the actual value is too close to the set value. And at this time, pay attention to the vehicle distance.

# Adaptive cruise activation display interface

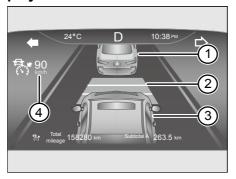


Figure-combination instrument: ACC is activated. The system detected the vehicle ahead and is controlling the distance.

- 1. The vehicle in front identified
- 2. Actual car following distance
- 3. this car
- Set cruise speed

## Vehicle following stop/start

- ACC system can control the vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to stop under normal driving conditions. If the stopping time is less than 3s, the vehicle can automatically follow the front vehicle to start.
- If the vehicle stops for less than 10min, the driver needs to press the accelerator pedal or reactivate the ACC by the "SET" key of the ACC cruise handle.
- If the vehicle stops for more than 10min, the ACC system will enter the standby state and the EPB will be pulled up.

After ACC controls the vehicle to stop, the electronic handbrake will automatically start and ACC will exit.

- Parking for more than 10 minutes;
- The driver's side door is opened:
- Unbelt the driver's side seat belt:
- The ignition key is closed:
- Open the front engine hood
- **ESP OFF function**
- Gear is not in forward gear

## Active acceleration/deceleration while using the ACC system

- With ACC ON, depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate continuously to the desired speed and then release the accelerator pedal. If the speed is greater than 150 km/h or the accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for more than 15 min, the system will enter the standby state and ACC needs to be activated again.
- When the CC is activated, depress the brake pedal, the vehicle will continue to decelerate, and the ACC system will automatically enter the standby state. After releasing the brake pedal, the ACC needs to be reactivated.

#### Note

When overtaking, the driver controls the vehicle, and the ACC vehicle-to-vehicle distance control and vehicle speed control will not be activated.

# Early warning assistant braking system

The early warning auxiliary braking system includes an automatic emergency braking system (AEB), automatic emergency braking system-pedestrian protection system. vehicle forward collision warning (FCW), pedestrian forward collision warning (PCW), and other functions. When the system detects the potential collision risk with the vehicle, pedestrian or other objects ahead, it will give audible and visual alarm to provide sufficient response time for the driver, and apply braking slightly when the situation becomes serious, or even emergency braking automatically according to the situation, so as to assist the driver to avoid collision or reduce the injury caused by collision.

#### i Hint

The vehicle speed range for triggering the FCW and PCW functions is above 30km/h, and the minimum vehicle speed for triggering the automatic emergency braking system and the automatic emergency braking system-pedestrian protection system function is 4km/h.

### **↑** WARNING

- PAB cannot guarantee collision avoidance under any circumstances. And the driver must always control the vehicle and be fully responsible for it.
- The pedestrian protection function cannot be fully implemented within the speed range specified for the system because its technology cannot overcome the limitations of some physical conditions. Therefore, the responsibility of taking timely and effective braking behavior always depends on the driver. The pedestrian protection system gives an alarm or brakes with the help of the brake pedal or avoids pedestrians based on the actual situation.
- When the ESP function is off or the fault light is ON, the automatic emergency braking function is OFF.
- If the collision warning function gives an alarm, the driver must apply the brake according to the traffic conditions to reduce the speed or steer away from the obstacle.

## **↑** WARNING

- The performance of PAB will be greatly limited for targets that merge into your lane, targets that are detected only after your vehicle changes lanes, and targets in sharp curve roads.
- When the radar system is affected by the environment (such as electric field interference, underground parking lot, tunnel, railway bridge, railway track, construction area, door with height & width limit, etc.), the detection will be disturbed, and the performance of PAB will reduce or its false triggering rate will raise.
- Towing the trailer will reduce the dynamic performance of ACC. Structurally modified vehicles (such as chassis height reduced, the license plate mounting plate changed at the front of the vehicle, etc.) may reduce the performance of the PAB or raise its false triggering rate.
- Due to the inherent limitations of the system, false triggering cannot be completely avoided;

## **↑** WARNING

- The camera is blocked by bird droppings, dirt, ice, insects, etc. The system may not work. Do not repair the windshield near the sensor (inside rearview mirror). Cracks will affect the recognition effect of the camera, and thus the cracked windshield must be replaced in whole.
- The PAB is in the background and will not be noticed by the driver. If the vehicle ahead is detected by the system, it will not be displayed to the driver; If the PAB actively brakes to completely avoid a collision, after stopping for 1.5s, the system will release the brake and the driver must take over the vehicle.
- The camera may not operate in cold and harsh weather conditions. Rain, snow, fog, and low illumination can affect the recognition of pedestrians by cameras and reduce the performance of pedestrian early warning assistant braking systems.

## **MARNING**

- If driving too close for a long time, the safe distance alarm will give a distance warning. If the object traveling ahead brakes strongly, the collision may be inevitable.
- In case of an emergency alarm, if the driver has noticed that (for example, the driver turns the steering wheel or applies emergency braking), the system will not continue to trigger AEB.
- If the driver steps on the brake or obvious refueling valve, the braking force intervention imposed by the emergency braking system may be interrupted.
- Rainstorm, water mist, ice and snow or sludge may weaken the performance of radar sensor and camera. Therefore, keep the surface of radar sensor and camera clean to avoid affecting normal operation.
- Pedestrian protection cannot rely on the system itself to completely avoid accidents and serious iniuries.

#### **MARNING**

- Pedestrian protection functions may have an unwanted alarm and brake intervention under some complex working conditions.
- Pedestrian protection systems with functional failures may have unwanted alarms and brake interventions, for example, due to radar/camera sensor angular misalignment.
- At all times, the driver must be ready to take over the control of the vehicle.
- If the pedestrian protection system triggers braking, the foot feeling of the brake pedal will harden.
- When the driver presses the accelerator pedal or turns the steering wheel, the automatic braking triggered by the pedestrian protection function will be inhibited from withdrawing.
- Improper maintenance or modification of vehicles may cause sensor dislocation and affect the normal operation of the system.

# Forward Collision Warning System

The Forward Collision Warning System detects the information of other vehicles in front of the vehicle through the forward-looking camera and millimeter-wave radar. When the vehicle speed is higher than 30km / h, and the vehicle speed is higher than the vehicle in front and lower than a certain safe distance, it reminds the driver to slow down in time and maintain a relatively safe distance and speed with the vehicle in front through the alarm tone and the prompt information on the combination instrument. When the vehicle speed is less than 30km / h, it exits this function.

#### System setting



Figure - central control display front collision warning setting interface

The user can set the opening/closing of the front collision alarm system on the interface of the central control display.

#### Safe distance alarm

In the process of driving, if you drive by yourself for a long time and follow the car closely, the system will send a safe distance alarm and the combination instrument will prompt the driver that the vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front

## Pre-alarm

During driving, when there is a risk of colli-

sion between your car and the car in front, the system will give a warning visually and audibly, the combination instrument will prompt information, and the speaker will give an alarm at the same time. Drivers should take appropriate operations in time to ensure a safe driving distance.

#### **Emergency alarm**

After the pre-alarm occurs, if the driver still has no respond, the emergency alarm will be triggered, and the system will apply a short braking. Meanwhile, the combination instrument will display a prompt message. In some emergency conditions, the pre-alarm may be skipped and the emergency alarm will be triggered directly. In case of camera failure, the emergency alarm will not be triggered.

#### Note

- When ACC is turned on, the safe distance alarm will be suppressed.
- For pre-alarm and emergency alarm, the range of owner's vehicle speed relative to stationary target is 30 km/h~85 km/h; And that relative to moving target is 30 km/h~150 km/h; And that of safety distance alarm is 65 km/h~150 km/ h.
- The working speed of brake assist is 4km/h ~ 85km/h for stationary target and 4km/h ~ 150km/h for moving target.

The forward collision warning system may not work when the following conditions occur, but not limited to:

- When driving through a sharp turn;
- The driver stepped on the accelerator pedal greatly;
- When the forward collision warning system is turned off or the system fails;
- System initialization
- FCW fault:
- Gear is not in forward gear;
- Manual shutdown of FSP or FSP fail-

ure:

- Instrument fault
- Vehicle instability:
- When the driver is not wearing a seat belt:
- When all brake signal lamps fail;
- Gear is not in forward gear
- When the radar sensor or front-view camera is dirty and covered;
- When driving on snowy or rainstorm days;
- When there are narrow vehicles (for example, motorcycles) driving ahead;
- When there are vehicles on the left and right sides:
- Driving in places with strong radar signal reflected radiation (e.g. in multi-storev parking lots);
- In case of crossing vehicles:
- The driver quickly turns the steering wheel:
- The vehicle speed is outside the working speed range;
- The system considers that the collision risk has been unlocked:
- When there are stationary obstacles ahead (e.g. anchored vehicles);

When there is an oncoming vehicle.

The Forward Collision Warning System must be turned off in the following cases:

- When the vehicle is towed:
- When the vehicle is on the drum test bench:
- When the radar sensor or front-view camera fails:
- When an external force (for example, rear-end collision) acts on the radar sensor.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Forward Collision Warning System can't violate the laws of physics! Do not take risks with the extra convenience features provided by the Forward Collision Warning System. The driver must be ready to apply braking to the vehicle at any time, apply the foot brake according to the alarm sent by the front collision pre-alarm system to reduce the speed or avoid obstacles.

# AEBS (Automatic emergency brake system)

If the driver does not respond to the emergency alarm and the dangerous possibility is further increased, the system will enter automatic emergency braking. The system will apply braking force within its capacity to avoid or mitigate the damage caused by collision.

If the driver has taken braking measures in an emergency, but the braking force is insufficient, the braking system will provide the remaining braking force to achieve the best target braking force and avoid or mitigate the injury caused by collision.

#### System setting



Illustration-Central Control Display: Automatic Emergency Brake Setting Interface

The user can set the opening/closing of automatic emergency braking in the interface of the central control display screen.

## The automatic emergency braking system may not work when:

- When the accelerator pedal is stepped to the bottom:
- When the automatic emergency braking system is shut down or the system fails:
- Heavy braking by driver;
- The system considers that the collision risk has been unlocked;
- Vehicle instability;
- System initialization
- Instrument fault
- Failure of early warning assistant braking system
- Gear is not in forward gear;
- The vehicle speed is outside the working speed;
- After manually closing ESP;
- When the driver is not wearing a seat belt;
- The driver actively turn:
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal urgently;
- Power System OFF;
- ESP fault;
- When the radar sensor or front-view

camera is dirty and covered;

- When driving on snowy or rainstorm days:
- When there are narrow vehicles (for example, motorcycles) driving ahead;
- When there are vehicles on the left and right sides;
- Driving in places with strong radar signal reflected radiation (e.g. in multi-storev parking lots);
- In case of crossing vehicles:
- When there are stationary obstacles ahead (e.g. anchored vehicles);
- Cross the vehicle horizontally and add motorcycles, bicycles, animals and other objects;
- When there is an oncoming vehicle.

The automatic emergency braking system shall be closed in the following cases:

- When the vehicle is towed:
- When the vehicle is on the drum test bench:
- When the radar sensor or front-view camera fails:
- When an external force (for example, rear-end collision) acts on the radar sensor.

## Pedestrian identification

For ordinary moving pedestrian targets crossing the road, the early warning auxiliary braking system can identify it; but it cannot identify special targets such as non-moving pedestrians.

When targeting pedestrians, the Early Warning Assisted Braking System includes the Automatic Emergency Braking System-Pedestrian Protection System and Pedestrian Pre-Collision Warning (PCW).

Pedestrian Collision Warning (PCW) reminds the driver to brake in time through alarm when there is a risk of rear end collision with pedestrians crossing the road.

If the driver fails to respond at all, the automatic emergency braking system - pedestrian protection system will actively apply the brake to avoid or reduce the injury caused by the collision accident.

Pedestrian recognition can detect pedestrians through millimeter wave radar used by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and forward camera used by lane departure warning system. The detection limitations of camera and radar will affect the performance of pedestrian warning auxiliary braking system.

# Low-speed pedestrian warning system

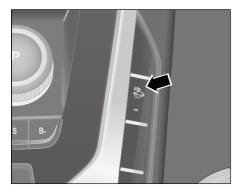


Figure - Pedestrian warning switch

Due to the relatively low noise of pure electric vehicles at low speed, it is difficult for the surrounding pedestrians to detect. To minimize the potential safety hazard caused by silent driving of electric vehicles. The low-speed pedestrian warning device will sound when driving at a low speed of 0 km/h~20 km/h. After exceeding 20 km/h, the sound will fade out until it disappears completely at 30 km/h. Similarly, when decelerating, there will be a fade-in effect.

#### Pedestrian warning system warning tone

The low-speed pedestrian warning system (VSP) function is turned on by default. When the VSPOFF button is not triggered (when the indicator light is not on), the pedestrian warning device has the following two sounding states:

- Driving warning sound: When the whole vehicle is in READY, the pedestrian system is activated, the gear is in "N" or "S" or "D", and the vehicle gives a warning sound when the speed is 1-30km/h.
- Reversing warning tone: When the complete vehicle is in READY, the pedestrian system is activated, the gear is in "R" gear, and the vehicle makes a "tick" sound.

#### Note

Even if the vehicle is stationary, the reversing warning tone will not stop.

## **MARNING**

- The pedestrian warning system must not be turned off where there is a possibility of pedestrians.
- If the vehicle is driven with the pedestrian warning system off, the surrounding pedestrians may not notice the moving vehicles, resulting in injury, even death of the surrounding pedestrians.
- If the vehicle does not sound a warning tone when the pedestrian warning system is activated (the "VSP off" indicator does not light up), please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

## Tire pressure monitoring system

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is called Tire Pressure MRUNitoring System in English. Your vehicle is equipped with a direct-type tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that monitors the pressure and temperature in your tires while driving through the tire pressure sensors on the rims and sends the pressure information to the receiver from the inside of the tires through the wireless transmitter. After decoding analysis, the CAN will send information to the combination instrument to display current pressure and temperature.

When the tire has low pressure, high pressure, rapid air leakage, high temperature, sensor loss, and low battery, the receiver will send an alarm signal and display it through the onboard computer display on the dashboard.

After the vehicle starts, the instrument can display the tire temperature and pressure value. This value is the historical value of the last driving, not the tire temperature and pressure value of the current vehicle state. After the vehicle starts driving and its speed exceeds 30km / h, the system starts to update the current tire status in real-time, the instrument updates and displays the current tire pressure/tire temperature value of the tire, and the tire pressure monitoring system automatically enters the normal working mode.

#### Alarm and reminder mode

In case of high pressure, low pressure, rapid air leakage, high temperature, loss of tire pressure sensor, low sensor power, sensor failure and other faults threatening driving safety, the system will enter the alarm state! The central control display screen will be switched to the TPMS interface preferentially, the alarm tire at the corresponding position will alarm, and the alarm indicator light on the combination instrument will also light up accordingly. The driver shall take corresponding measures immediately to avoid affecting the life safety of drivers and passengers.

#### Tire temperature alarm



Figure - tire pressure display interface of combination instrument

When the system detects that the temperature of any one of the four tires is abnormal, the corresponding value of the tire displayed on the tire temperature interface of center console display will turn red, accompanied by an alarm sound, and the TPMS system fault warning light (!) will light up.

#### Tire pressure alarm



Figure - tire pressure display interface of combination instrument

When the system detects that the pressure of any one of the four tires is abnormal, the corresponding value of the tire displayed on the tire temperature interface of center console display will turn red, accompanied by an alarm sound, and the TPMS system fault warning light (!) will light up.

#### Note

- This system is not a tire pressure gauge, nor can it prevent tire leakage and tire burst. Its main function is to monitor tire temperature and pressure, and give an alarm when the value is lower or higher than a certain set value.
- If a radio transmitter (eg wireless headset, walkie-talkie) is used in or near the vehicle, the operation of the tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed.
- When the vehicle travels about 10000Km and the tires are rotated, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to re-match the tire pressure sensor, otherwise, the tire position displayed on the instrument will not match the actual position.

## i Hint

This figure is for reference only, and the actual tire pressure value shall be subject to the actual situation.

## Parking sensors and parking rear view system \*

## Parking Distance Control System

This car is equipped with four ultrasonic probes, which are installed on the rear bumper.

The parking assistance system is a safety assistance device for vehicles when parking. It uses ultrasonic wave to detect the approximate distance from the obstacle and displays it through the display on the meter to inform the driver of the result (through an intermittent sound signal). The parking senor is only a parking assistance system, which can not replace the objective analysis of obstacles by the driver.

The four segments of the reverse display indicate the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle, and a buzzer warning will sound at the same time.

The parking assist system will be forced to work in "R" gear. As long as the obstacle appears within the detectable range of the radar, a corresponding buzzer warning will

sound.

When the vehicle reverses, four ultrasonic probes scan the rear area of the vehicle to determine whether there are obstacles. If an obstacle is detected, the probe will calculate its distance to the vehicle body and transmit it to the center console display. The distance and orientation of the nearest obstacle is displayed to prompt the driver through the alarm sound signal.

The parking radar system is divided into four-alarm sections, namely ZONE1, ZONE2, ZONE3, and ZONE4, which correspond to the red, yellow, green, and green sections of the display screen. The display screen only displays the color section corresponding to the obstacle position, and the rest is not displayed; When there are no obstacles behind the vehicle, no color segments are displayed. Among them, ZONE2, ZONE3 and ZONE4 are warning areas, and the combination instrument buzzer will send intermittent beeps at different frequencies to remind the distance to obstacles; ZONE1 is a long sound warning device, and the buzzer of combination instrument will send a continuous beep. When the combination instrument sends a continuous beep and the red segment appears on the display, the driver should stop reversing immediately to

avoid collision and scratching with obstacles.

#### Reversing segment reminder

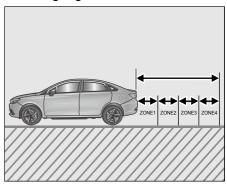


Figure-Schematic diagram of detection distance of parking sensor

The farthest detection distance of sensor is 150cm, which can be divided into four gears of alarm according to the distance of obstacles detected.

## Parking sensors and parking rear view system \*

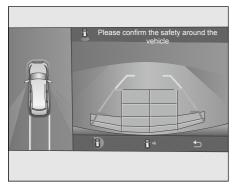


Figure-AVM model parking radar display



Figure- Non-AVM model parking radar display

Display screen	Distance	Color
1 segment	0-30cm	Red
2 segment	30cm~60cm	Yellow
3 segment	60cm~150cm	Green

## **i** Hint

When the probe detects an obstacle, the corresponding alarm segment is displayed. When both probes detect an obstacle, the corresponding alarm segments are both displayed.

#### Radar malfunction reminder\*



Figure - Combination instrument displays the fault reminder of the parking sensor

When the parking radar system is turned on, if the system detects fault information, the combination instrument will give a voice prompt and a text prompt.

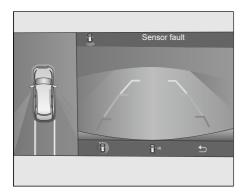


Figure-AVM Central Control Display Displays Parking Sensor Fault Reminder

When the parking radar system is turned on, if the system detects fault information, the central control display screen will display a fault prompt interface.

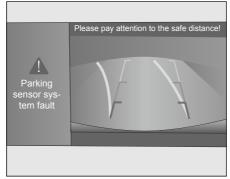


Figure - the central control display screen of non-AVM models shows the fault reminder of parking sensor

When the parking radar system is turned on, if the system detects fault information, the central control display screen will display a fault prompt interface.

#### **↑** WARNING

- The parking radar system is only a parking assist system, and the driver still needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment during the parking process.
- There are blind spots when the ultrasonic sensors of the reversing radar system detect the barrier. When reversing, the driver must observe carefully to avoid parking accidents.
- The sensors of the parking radar system are precision parts. Do not remove, install or repair the sensors without authorization. Damage caused by removal, installation or repair without authorization is not covered by the warranty.
- The surfaces of certain items cannot reflect the signals from the sensors of the alarm system, so that the alarm system cannot detect such items or persons wearing such clothing.

#### Note

- If there are water droplets attached to the surface of the ultrasonic sensor, the sensitivity of the ultrasonic sensor will decrease, and the sensitivity can be restored by wiping off the water droplets attached to the ultrasonic sensor.
- The outside noise source may interfere with the alarm system, so that the system cannot detect the items or persons properly.
- When reversing in a narrow space or uphill, the system may detect the railings, trees or slope. This is a normal phenomenon.
- In order to ensure the function of ultrasonic sensor, it must be kept clean and avoid freezing. Be sure to clean the parking radar system gently and shortly with a high pressure washer. Make sure the distance between the nozzle and the ultrasonic sensor is at least 10 cm and more.

#### Conditions affecting parking sensor

The parking sensor system may not work properly in case of the following:

- The sensor is wet and frozen (the sensor can work normally after thawing and dehumidification).
- The sensor is covered with foreign matters such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked (The sensor can work normally when the foreign matters are removed or the sensor blockage is removed).
- Driving the vehicle on rough surfaces (unpaved, gravel, bumpy, or steep slopes).
- 4. There are objects that can produce large noise interference within the detection range of the sensor (vehicle horn, vehicle engine that can make large sound or pneumatic braking of truck, etc.).
- 5. Heavy rain or water spray.
- 6. There is a radio transmitter within the detection range of the sensor.
- 7. Trailer towing.

The detection range may be reduced in the following situations:

- The sensor is polluted by foreign matter such as snow or water (the detection range returns to normal after removing pollutants)
- 2. The outside temperature is extremely hot or extremely cold.

The sensor may not recognize the following objects:

- Sheet or slender objects such as steel cables, chains, thinner columns and piles.
- An object that absorbs the frequency of the sensor, such as clothes, sponge material, or snow.
- Lower steps.
- 4. Lower half-open rolling gate.

## **↑** WARNING

- There are blind spots when the ultrasonic sensors of the reversing radar system detect the barrier. When reversing, the driver must observe carefully to avoid parking accidents.
- It is recommended that the reversing speed should not exceed 5km/h, when the reversing radar system continues to sound, immediately stop reversing. Then, the vehicle is extremely close to the barrier. Be sure to avoid accidents.
- The sensors of the reversing radar system are precision parts. Do not remove, install or repair the sensors without authorization. Damage caused by removal, installation or repair without authorization is not covered by the warranty.
- The parking radar system is only a parking assist system, and the driver still needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment during the parking process.

## **Backup rearview system**

In some models, the backup camera is installed on the outside of the trunk lid. The reversing camera system captures the image behind the vehicle by this camera and transmits it to the center console display in the cab to assist the driver in reversing.

When driving the vehicle backward and reversing in a narrow parking space, the camera installed at the back of the vehicle is used to capture images. The driver can clearly see the road conditions behind the vehicle through the display, so as to intuitively assist the driver to reverse safely and easily and avoid collision and scratching the body.

The camera is installed in the center of the trunk lid at the rear of the vehicle, and the field of view is:

Horizontal field of view: 120°+2° Vertical field of view: 98°±2°

### Turn on and off the reversing rear view system

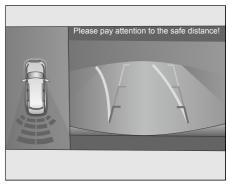


Figure - backup camera

When the vehicle is in R gear, the rearview camera is activated, and the central control display screen will display the backup image in real time. At the same time, the back-up image is equipped with dynamic and static track line indication, and the driver can judge the distance between the ground obstacles and the vehicle according to the static track line identification.

When the vehicle exits the R gear, the rearview camera stops working and the central control display returns to the previous display interface.

#### Note

When reversing, pay attention to control the speed and observe the surrounding environment. Never take it lightly because you look behind as reversing.

#### Backup image fault reminder\*



Figure- Non-AVM model backup image failure display

When the back-up image is turned on, if the system detects fault information, the central control display will display a text prompt.

#### **Auxiliary line function description**

The guidance provided in this section is only an example. Before using the reversing assist system, it must be checked whether the reversing space is enough.

The back-up camera provides assistance to the driver by displaying the image behind the vehicle when reversing. The image displayed on the screen is the horizontal reverse image of the internal rearview mirror.

#### Note

The position of the guideline displayed on the screen will change with the vehicle load (number of passengers, number of luggage, etc.). Before operation, always visually check the environment behind and around the vehicle.

According to the actual loading height and angle, the display effect of the actual product will be slightly different from that in the figure.

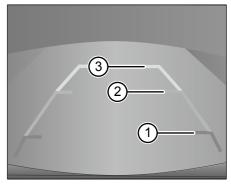


Figure- Non-AVM model backup image guides display

For specific display, the static auxiliary line adopts three-color display, which corresponds to the segmented definition of the sound alarm of reversing assist system, namely:

- The first section at short range of ≤50cm is shown in red in the figure;
- The second section at a middle range of 50cm-150cmis shown in yellow in the figure;
- The third section at a long range of 150cm-300cm is shown in green in the figure;

### Conditions affecting the backup camera

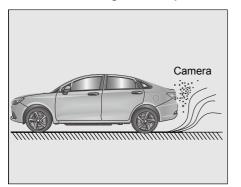


Figure- conditions affecting the backup camera Driving in stormy or foggy weather will affect the visual effect of reversing.

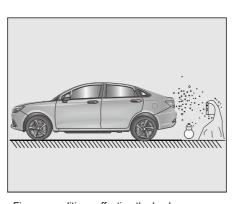


Figure- conditions affecting the backup camera The surface of the camera is frozen or stained with dirt, dust, and snowflakes, which will affect the visual effect of reversing.

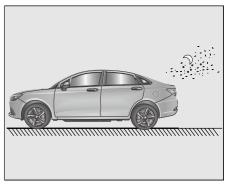


Figure- conditions affecting the backup camera Reversing at night will affect the visual effect of reversing.

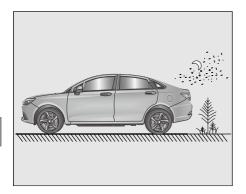


Figure- conditions affecting the backup camera In the dark, reversing without reversing lights will affect the visual effect of reversing.

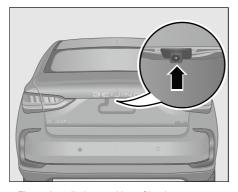


Figure-Installation position of back-up camera In order to get a good image, keep the back-up camera clean at all times, and do not cover the camera. When cleaning camera, use soft wet cloth to avoid scratching of camera lens.

#### Note

- When reversing, you should not rely entirely on the images provided by the parking camera. You must make sure that you are very clear about the driving path.
- When reversing, you can't just watch the screen. The screen image is different from the actual situation. When reversing, if you only watch the screen, you may collide with vehicles, people or objects. You still need to pay attention to the surrounding environment during reversing. The driver still needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment during the parking process.
- If the trunk lid is not closed totally, do not use the system.
- As the camera is equipped with waterproof structure, please do not remove, disassemble or modify it.

## Complete vehicle control

## Vehicle control system

The vehicle control system is used to collect the driver's needs (such as accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and gear position), adjust the ride comfort and comfort of driving, and limit the output torque of the vehicle according to the vehicle condition (the actual capacity of the current high-voltage battery system and the driving motor).

## **Creeping Mode**

Similar to the traditional gasoline engine vehicle equipped with automatic transmission, when the vehicle starts, release the brake pedal and the vehicle can start slowly and smoothly (for the setting of creep mode, please refer to the Owner's Manual of Center Console Display Information and Entertainment System).

## Creep Mode Setting Instructions

When the vehicle meets any of the following conditions, the driver can switch the creep mode on and off:

1 The vehicle is in Ready and the gear is in "P".

The vehicle is in Ready, the vehicle is in "N" gear, the speed is lower than 2km/h, and the brake pedal is pressed.

#### Use range of creeping setting

The creep setting state of center console display affects whether the D/S gear has the creep function. If the creep is set to on, the vehicle will maintain a certain speed and run at a low speed without depressing accelerator pedal.

#### Note

- "R" gear is not affected by the setting state of creeping switch ("R" gear has been retained with a creep function for the convenience of users in reversing).
- After the creep setting, the vehicle will keep the last setting state of the user after the vehicle is powered on again.

## **Normal Mode**

Just like a traditional car, during normal driving, the vehicle control system can control the torque output of the corresponding drive motor according to the current driving needs (such as acceleration and braking).

## **Energy regeneration mode**

When the vehicle is braking or sliding, the vehicle enters the energy recovery mode. Part of the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy by driving the motor and then stored in the power battery.

## Single Pedal Mode\*

The user can decelerate or stop the vehicle only by the accelerator pedal. The system helps the user not have to move back and forth between the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal, so as to reduce the user's fatigue and improve the vehicle driveability (For the setting of single pedal mode, please refer to the Owner's Manual of Center Console Display Information and Entertainment System).

#### Figure - Single Pedal Mode Operation

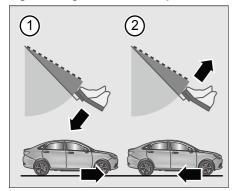


Figure- Single Pedal Mode Operation

- 1. Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate or drive at a constant speed;
- Release the accelerator pedal to decelerate the vehicle. If the accelerator pedal is fully released, the vehicle speed will decelerate to the creeping speed or 0km / h (if the vehicle creeping is off, the vehicle will decelerate to 0km / h, otherwise, it will decelerate to the creeping speed).

Under the single pedal driving mode, the vehicle relies on the regenerative braking system for braking (non-hydraulic system). The braking intensity is determined by the

energy recovery intensity set by the vehicle (refer to the energy recovery intensity setting for details). The driver can adjust the speed in real time by depressing or releasing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is fully released (the foot is not depressed on the accelerator pedal), the vehicle braking strength will maintain the maximum braking force under the energy recovery strength setting and exit braking until the vehicle speed decreases to creep speed or 0.

#### **↑** WARNING

- When the vehicle is in the braking state of single pedal driving mode, please pull up the parking brake in time or step on the brake to shift to "P" (if there is a parking demand).
- If you feel that the deceleration force provided by the single pedal driving mode is insufficient, please step on the brake pedal in time.
- When the vehicle has stopped in the single pedal driving mode, if the vehicle slips backward or forward, please step on the brake pedal in time

## **⚠ WARNING**

Under the following scenarios, single pedal driving may not be able to stop the vehicle or provide sufficient braking deceleration:

- Vehicle overload status;
- Drive on roads with ramps;
- · On slippery or ice and snow roads;
- The vehicle is in low temperature environment:
- The battery is fully charged or the charging power of the battery is limited;
- The motor is overheated;
- There is a fault in the complete vehicle;

## i Hint

The single pedal mode is turned on by default when the vehicle leaves the factory.

#### Instructions for setting single pedal mode

When the vehicle meets any of the following conditions, the driver can switch the single pedal mode on and off:

- The vehicle is in Ready and the gear is in "P" position, and there is no energy recovery prohibition sign on the meter.
- The vehicle is in Ready, the vehicle is in "N" gear, the vehicle speed is lower than 2 km/h, the brake pedal is depressed, and there is no energy recovery prohibition sign on the meter.

## i Hint

Only "D" gears have single pedal function, "S" or "R" gears do not have sinale pedal function.

#### Note

- After the single pedal setting, the vehicle will keep the last setting state of the user after the vehicle is powered on again.
- When the vehicle is in single-pedal driving mode, if you switch gears (from "D" to "S"), the single-pedal function will be automatically released, please drive carefully.

## Fault mode

After detecting the internal fault of the vehicle, the whole vehicle control system can enter the corresponding fault mode according to the setting mechanism. In the fault mode, the vehicle will enter the working state of fault modes such as high voltage cut-off, zero torque, limp, limited power, or limited speed.

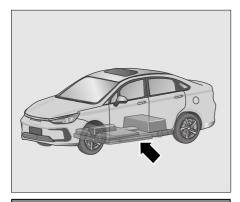
## Fault recovery operation

When the whole vehicle enters the limp state, if the fault causing limp is eliminated and the whole vehicle needs to exit the limp state and returns to normal driving state, it needs to be powered on at low voltage again.

#### remote control mode

When the driver leaves and the "START/ STOP" button is in "OFF" mode, the user can enter remote control through the mobile APP, including remote slow charging, remote cooling, remote heating and remote defrosting. The whole vehicle enters the remote control mode.

## **Power battery**



### Note

- When the vehicle passes through special roads such as mud, potholes, curbs, high speed bumps and sidewalk slopes, be careful to avoid scratching or damaging the power battery.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road with deep ponding for a long time (the water depth is more than half of the wheel), so as to avoid short circuit, electric leakage or other damage because the power battery is soaked in water for a long time.

- Do not leave the vehicle above 55°C or below -30°C for more than 24 hours.
- To keep the battery in the best working condition, please use the high-power DC fast charging method as little as possible. High-power DC fast charging will affect the life of the power battery.
- In the low-temperature environment in winter, some of the energy in the power battery may not be used for the vehicle due to the low battery temperature.
- When the power battery is insufficient or overheated, the battery output power may be limited.
- In hot weather, continuous driving at high speed and fast charging after long-time climbing will cause the battery to overheat, and the output power of the battery may be limited.
- When the battery is overheated, please drive at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the driving vehicle. In case of warning, please pull over and park immediately.

## **↑** WARNING

- Non-professional personnel are strictly forbidden to disassemble, check and repair the power battery to avoid electric shock injury due to improper operation!
- If the power battery is soaked in water deeper than half a wheel for a long time, please contact the authorized dealer of BJEV for maintenance.
- If the power battery is scratched or damaged due to collision during vehicle use:

1) If the vehicle has a no-fault alarm and can drive normally, please park the vehicle in a safe area for inspection, and contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance as soon as possible.

If the power battery produces smoke or peculiar smell, or a fault alarm is displayed on the instrument, stop the vehicle immediately, keep away from the vehicle for alarm, and contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair.

## Charge system description

## Vehicle charging description

Main security precautions

## ∕N WARNING

- The vehicle charging system has high voltage. Unauthorized modification of vehicle charging system components, on-board charging equipment or touching damaged components may lead to electric shock, even death. After the accident, the electrical safety inspection of the accident vehicle should be carried out at the special dealer of BAIC New Energy.
- Ground instruction: The equipment must be well grounded; if the equipment is failed or damaged, the ground wire has provided the minimum impedance circuit discharge to reduce the risk of electric shock. The equipment installs ground wire connecting equipment grounding point with three-phase plug grounding point. The plug must match with the power socket installed correctly and grounded well.

## **↑** WARNING

- Before, during or after charging, please pay attention to the following safety matters to protect the personal and property safety of yourself and others.
- Before charging, please ensure that the charging equipment is not scratched, rusted or broken, or the charging port, cable, charger, wire and plug surface are not damaged; Do not charge if the socket surface is damaged, rusted, broken or the connection is too loose: If there is dust or moisture in the above charging equipment or charging port, cable, charger and other equipment, please wipe it with a dry cloth until it is clean and then perform charging.
- During charging the vehicle, please choose to charge in a relatively safe environment (e.g. an environment preventing liquid, fire, etc.)
- After charging is finished, do not disconnect the charging connection device with wet hands or standing in water to avoid personal injury caused by electric shock.

## **↑** WARNING

- If there is no canopy on rainy and snowy days, charging is not allowed to prevent a short circuit of the line, and charging is not recommended if there is a canopy.
- When charging, do not touch the charging port. Do not charge or touch the vehicle in thunderstorm weather to avoid lightning stroke.
- Please don't get charging device close to heater or other thermal source.
- In case of charging failure or abnormality, please stop charging immediately. It is recommended to contact contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.
- Do not modify or disassemble charging equipment and related ports without permission, which may lead to charging failure and fire!
- Please ensure that the charging connection device is disconnected from the vehicle charging port before driving, otherwise, the whole vehicle cannot run normally.

### **↑** WARNING

- When the charging cable is connected to the power supply by an adapter, extension cable, or similar equipment during vehicle charging, it may cause fire or electric shock, and there is a risk of fatal injury.
- In case the vehicle gives out strange smell or smoke during charging, please immediately stop charging
- For safety reasons, use only onboard or manufacturer-specified charging cables or similar equipment suitable for the vehicle.
- Do not use the damaged charging cable. When you find that the charging cable or power supply is abnormally hot, please stop charging, and ask a qualified professional service center or technician to check the state of charging product.
- Please read carefully and observe the safety precautions in the charging product operation manual.

#### Note

For safety reasons, please only use the charging equipment approved by BJEV or the national compulsory inspection department that is applicable to the vehicle for charging. And note the following:

- After charging is finished, please disconnect the vehicle from the charging equipment in the way specified in the manual to avoid product damage or performance degradation caused by improper operation.
- Do not alter the high voltage components and orange cables in the charging system without authorization.
- Do not touch damaged parts or damaged orange cables in the charging system.
- Do not remove the cover of high voltage electrical system components marked with yellow warning stickers.
- During or after charging, make sure the vehicle is in "P" gear before disconnecting the charging connection.

#### Note

- When the charging reminder indicator in the combination instrument\lights up, please charge as soon as possible. It is not recommended to charge after the power is completely exhausted (the power battery is less than 20%), otherwise, the service life of the power battery system will be affected.
- During charging, vehicle is recommended to park in the ventilated place

#### Note

- If the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is suggested that the user should charge it slowly once every month to balance and maintain the battery, so as to improve the service life of the vehicle battery.
- The available power of the power battery system will decrease slightly with the extension of service time.
- Do not park for more than 7 days when the power battery is too low (about 10% ~ 20%); Long-term low battery storage will cause irreversible damage to the power battery.
- The self-discharging phenomenon will occur during power battery storage. When storing the power battery, the user shall ensure that the power battery is in half power state (50% ~ 60%). It is recommended that users should not use the power battery for too long, and should not exceed three months at most.
- Power batteries that have been put on hold for a long time need to be charged and activated with small current when they are used again.

#### Slow charging port position

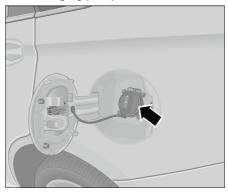


Figure - Left rear side wall of the vehicle: slow charging interface

The vehicle's slow charging port is located on the left rear side of the vehicle.

#### Quick charging port position

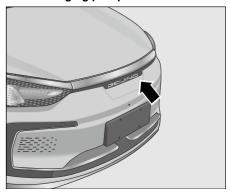


Figure-logo lower of the front bumper of the vehicle: quick charging interface

The quick-charging port of the vehicle is located under the middle logo of the front bumper of the vehicle.

Press the lower area of the logo letter G to open the guick charging port cap.

#### Charging warning sign



Figure- Charging warning sign

The vehicle charging warning sign is located inside the guard plate of the vehicle slow charging port.

## Household charging equipment (portable charger)\*



Figure-Household Charging Devices \*

The household charging equipment is stored in a toolbox under the floor mat of the trunk.

## i Hint

The power bank is an optional configuration. If the car is a model without a power bank, the customer needs to purchase it by herself/himself.

#### Note

When the temperature is extremely low and the battery level of the vehicle is too low, you may not be able to charge with the power bank.

## Slow charging line for AC charging pile



Figure- Slow charging line for AC charging pile

The vehicle is equipped with a slow AC charging line for the AC charging pile as standard, which is located in the rear trunk of the vehicle

#### Note

- Failure to operate according to regulations may cause danger;
- Please use the charging line only when the equipment functions normally and operates safely;
- Children are prohibited from touching charging piles;
- For the operation of charging pile, please refer to the operating manual of charging pile;
- During vehicle charging, if the indicator light is red, do not try to pull out the charging cable, otherwise the charging cable and charging port will be damaged;
- When the lock indicator light of the charging seat is green, the charging cable can be pulled out;

### Mark of charging gun for slow charging line for AC charging pile

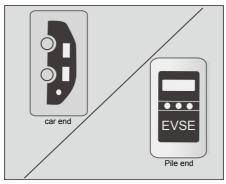


Figure-Logo on Charging Gun

The charging gun connected to the vehicle end is blue and affixed with the vehicle pattern logo.

The charging gun connected to the power supply end of the charging pile is black and affixed with the charging pile pattern logo.

## Charging method

#### There are three ways to charge vehicles:

- Household one-way AC slow charging: The charging connection device is a household charging cable, which connects the vehicle with a household 220V50Hz, 10A/16A single-phase twopole grounded socket to charge the vehicle. Please ensure that the ground cable of the socket is well connected to the earth.
- Slow charging of AC charging pile: Use the special AC charging cable for charging pile to reliably connect the charged vehicle with the AC charging pile approved by our company according to the operating instructions, and complete the AC charging work after a series of operations such as card insertion, password input and startup.
- Fast charging of DC charging pile: Use the charging cable provided by the charging pile to reliably connect the charged vehicle with the DC charging pile approved by our company according to the operating instructions, and complete the DC charging work after a series of operations such as card insertion, password input and startup.

## **Operation process**

#### Household AC charging mode

Please carry out charging and fault identification according to the contents specified in the instruction manual for supporting household charging equipment.

#### Slow charging of AC charging pile

1. Stop the vehicle at the designated parking place of the AC charging pile.

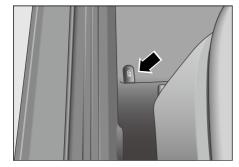


Figure- Slow charging port opening handle

- There is a hand clasping on the floor on the left side of the driver's seat. Pull up the hand clasping and open the charging port cap.
- 3. Open the AC charging port dust cover.
- 4. Pay attention to the identification sym-

bol on the charging line. The charging gun marked with the car end is inserted into the charging interface of the car end, and the charging gun marked with the pile end is inserted into the charging interface of the pile end.

After the charging cable is connected and the charging is started on the charging pile, the vehicle will automatically lock the charging gun at vehicle side to avoid pulling out the charging gun by mistake by non-users or children.

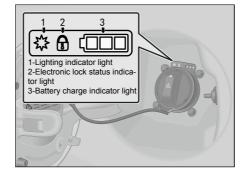


Figure-Charging Interface Indicator Module

 During the charging, the indication module of the charging interface will display the charging status of the vehicle. The indicator lights on the charging interface are divided into three groups according to their functions: lighting indicator lights, electronic lock status indicator lights, and battery power indicator lights from left to right;

The battery power indicator lamp is a set of red/green LEDs, which lights up gradually according to the SOC level of the battery. At present, it is divided into three charging progress display grids. After charging, the battery power indicator goes out.

When charging normally, the battery power indicator light is displayed as green; In case of charging failure, the battery power indicator light is displayed in red, and the three charging progress display grids are displayed in red according to the SOC status when the failure occurs.

- After charging is finished, the user needs to wait until the electronic lock indicator lamp of charging port turns green (or all the indicator lamps of charging port go out) (Note 2) to pull out the charging gun (Note 1).
- After pulling out the charging gun, please cover the dust cover of the charging gun and put the charging equipment into a special storage box.

During charging, if the user has special request and it is inconvenient to operate the charging pile, he can press the unlocking button on remote key successive two times to stop charging and turn on the electronic lock; When using this function, please pay attention to the indication state of the electronic lock indicator lamp of charging port.

#### Note 1:

After charging is completed, the customer should first pull out the charging gun at the car end and then pull out the charging gun at the pile end.

#### Note 2:

After the electronic lock of charging port is operated repeatedly, if the indicator lamp of the electronic lock is still red and the charging gun cannot be pulled out normally. Please follow the method of physical emergency unlocking of vehicle charging interface (Note 3). Do not try to pull out a gun violently or similar operations to prevent the product from being damaged.

#### Note 3:

If the electronic locking mechanism of charging port fails, the physical emergency unlocking method shall be used. The steps are as follows:

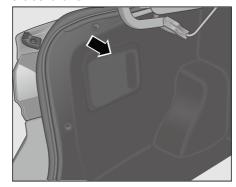


Figure-Emergency Unlock Cable

- 1) Open the trunk
- 2 Remove the rear left combination lamp service cover.



Figure-Emergency Unlock Cable

- 3 Pull the emergency unlocking cable.
- 10. If the user unlocks the charging gun by the remote key and there is no gun pulling action, the charging will be restored automatically after some time.

## i Hint

When the external power grid is powered off again, the charging device will automatically restart charging without reconnecting the charging device.

# VTOL mobile power station technology\*

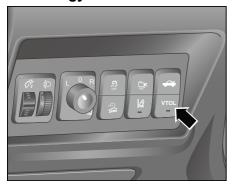


Figure - VTOL open switch

VTOL mobile power station technology refers to the use of V2L discharging connection device or V2V charging connection device to realize the external discharging of vehicles. The maximum external discharge capacity of the vehicle is 3.3KW, and the discharge voltage is 220V50HZ household voltage.

The V2L discharging connection device and V2V charging connection device are stored in the luggage compartment tool box (For details, see "On-board Tools \*" on P. 294).

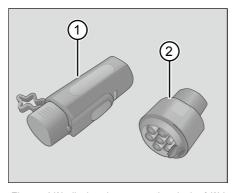


Figure - V2L discharging connection device/V2V charging connection device

① V2L discharging connection device: The vehicles with external discharging function can use the socket equipped on the authorized V2L discharging connection device to supply power, such as mobile phone, computer, induction electromagnetic oven, etc.

② V2V charging connection device: The vehicles with external discharging function can connect V2V charging connection device through AC charging port to charge other vehicles (charged vehicles need to meet relevant national standards for charging).

The V2L discharge connection device is used as follows:

 Open the slow charging port at the discharge vehicle end and plug the V2L

- discharge connecting device into the slow charging port;
- Press the VTOL On switch on the instrument panel on the left side of steering wheel and confirm that the combination instrument interface is the vehicle discharging interface.
- When the instrument cluster is displayed as a discharge interface, the socket on the V2L discharge connection device can be used to supply electricity to electrical appliances.

The V2V charging connection device is used as follows:

- Open the slow charging port at the discharged vehicle side, insert the V2V charging connection device into the slow charging port, insert the 32A AC charging gun at the other side, and insert the other end of 32A AC charging gun into the AC charging port of the charged vehicle;
- Press the VTOL On switch on the instrument panel on the left side of steering wheel and confirm that the combination instrument interface is the vehicle discharging interface.
- When the combination instrument displays the discharge interface, the vehicle to be charged can be charged.

Please pay attention to the following items before using the discharge function:

- Ensure that the AC port is free from scratches, rusts, cracks, or other abnormalities such as the muzzle, cable, socket, and wire surface damage.
- Do not use this function if the interface terminal is damaged, rusty, broken or has weak contact.
- Do not activate this function when the interface is dirty or wet. Wipe the plug with a dry and clean cloth to ensure that the discharge plug is dry and clean.

#### i Hint

- Try to use this function when SOC is high.
- When the complete vehicle discharges externally by VTOL mobile power station technology, this function is limited when the power of the complete vehicle is low.
- When the "OFF" gear is engaged to VTOL for a long time, but without output, the power consumption of the whole vehicle raises. It is suggested that the user shall unplug the vehicle when the equipment is not in use.
- The driving range of the cut-off discharge function can be set in the central control. Please confirm whether the driving range is sufficient before starting discharge.

#### Rapid charging operation flow of DC charging pile

- Stop the vehicle at the designated parking place of DC charging pile, and confirm that the gear of the complete vehicle is in "P" gear and EPB is pulled up.
- 2. Open the DC charging socket of the vehicle. The DC charging port is installed at the front logo of the car. Press and loosen the DC charging port cap, and the charging port cover will automatically pop open.

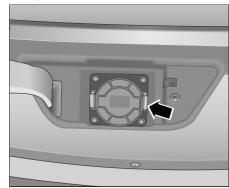


Figure-front logo of vehicle: rapid charging interface

- 3. Unlock the locking device of DC charging port dust cover, and the DC charging port dust cover will pop up automatically.
- Carry out corresponding charging operations according to the user's specifications or requirements of public charging facilities. Ensure that the vehicle is in "P" gear during the charging process or at the end of charging.

#### **Charging Time**

The time required for charging is related to many factors, such as current power, charging way, ambient temperature, battery temperature, power of charging equipment, etc. The maximum charging power of slow charging is 6.6 kW. When the battery temperature is higher than 10 °C, the battery is allowed to charge at 6.6 kW charging power. At a normal temperature of 25 °C, slow charging is used for charging, and the SOC of the battery ranges from 0% to 100%, and the time is 9 hours (R500 torsion beam model and R500 multi-link model)/10 hours (R600 multi-link model) respectively; Use fast charge for 30 minutes (battery SOC from 30% to 80%).

## **Driving skills**

## **Driving Tips in Various Conditions**

- In the lateral wind, you must drive at a low speed, so it is easy to control the vehicle.
- Maintain an appropriate angle to avoid driving at high, sharp-edged objects or other barriers on roads. Failure to do so may cause tire burst and other serious damage.
- When driving on bumpy roads or rough roads, reduce the speed, otherwise the corresponding impact and scratch will cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- Brake may be wet when the vehicle is washed or is running through deep water. Pay attention to the safety around, and then gently press the brake pedal. If the normal braking force is not felt, the braking effect of the brake may be reduced due to humidity. At this time, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal gently within high speed range to "dry" the brake disc as soon as possible. During operation, ensure that the operation does not endanger subsequent vehicles and other road users.

If the brake still fails to work normally, without affecting driving safety, park the car on the roadside and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for help.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Before driving, make sure the parking brake is released fully and its indicator has gone out.
- Don't step on the brake pedal when driving, otherwise, it will cause the brake to overheat, reduce the braking effect, and also lead to premature wear of the brake pad, and lead to excessive energy consumption.
- Slow down when driving down a long steep slope. Remember that using the brakes excessively can cause them too overheated to work properly.
- When driving on smooth roads, be careful when accelerating or braking. Sudden acceleration or emergency braking may lead to vehicle skidding or wheel idling.

#### Note

- When driving, try to avoid the road section with deep water to avoid the brake getting wet
- If the brakes are wet, the required braking distance will be longer than normal, and the vehicle may tilt to one side, and the parking brakes will not be able to brake the vehicle firmly. Therefore, the brake pedal must be lightly pressed to "dry" the brake.

## **Driving in the Rain**

#### When driving on slippery roads,

Use caution to drive when it is raining, because the visibility is poor, the windows may become foggy, and the road will be slippery.

- When it starts to rain, you should drive carefully because the road becomes slippery.
- Do not drive at high speed on the road when it rains, because the higher the speed, the easier it is to form a layer of water film between the tire and the road surface, which hinders the normal operation of the steering and brake system.

## **↑** WARNING

- When driving on slippery roads, emergency braking, acceleration, and steering may cause tires to slip and reduce vehicle maneuverability, thus causing accidents.
- After driving through the puddle, please gently depress the brake pedal to ensure that the braking function is normal, and the wet brake pad cannot brake normally. If only one brake gets wet and does not work properly, it will affect the steering control and cause an accident. Do not drive on the road full of water after heavy rain, otherwise serious damage to the vehicle may occur.

#### When encountering accumulated water pavement,

Do not drive on the road full of water after heavy rain, otherwise serious damage to the vehicle may occur.

#### Note

After driving through ponding road, the vehicle components such as motor system, power battery system, transmission system, travel system and vehicle electrical system may be seriously damaged. After driving on the ponding road and the vehicle is flooded, please be sure to contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection.

## **Essentials of driving in winter**

### Check the condition of battery and power batterv

Low temperature will degrade the performance of batteries and power batteries. The battery should be kept fully charged for starting in winter. In the battery chapter, how to test the battery is explained. You can drive to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV, and professional technicians will provide inspection for your vehicle.

#### Avoid freezing the door lock

Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent freezing.

#### Use windscreen washer fluid that contains antifreeze.

This product is sold at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. The mixing ratio with water can be determined according to the manufacturer's instructions.

## Do not use the parking brake when the parking brake is frozen

When parking, operate the shift knob to switch the complete vehicle gear to "P" gear and block the rear wheels. Do not use the parking brake, otherwise, the surrounding area of the parking brake device may be frozen by snow or accumulated water, which makes it difficult to release the parking brake.

## Don't accumulate snow and ice under the fender

Ice and snow accumulate under the fender, which will make steering difficult. When driving in cold weather, stop frequently to check whether there is snow and ice under the fender

#### Suggestions for carrying articles

According to driving needs, we suggest that you bring some necessary emergency supplies with you.

Items that may need to be placed on the car are: window scrapers, sandbags or salt bags, signal flash devices, shovels, traction ropes, etc.

### Improve economy

General description

The energy consumption rate mainly depends on the driver's personal driving style.

Energy consumption rate, brake and tire wear rate mainly depend on the following three major factors:

- The driver's driving style;
- Vehicle use conditions (weather, road conditions, etc.);
- Technical status of the complete vehicle.

If the economic driving mode is adopted predictably, the energy consumption rate can be easily reduced.

## Drive the vehicle predictably

Accelerating the vehicle will greatly raise the energy consumption rate. Therefore, the driving route should be planned in advance according to the road and traffic conditions to reduce the frequency of acceleration and braking as much as possible. As long as the road condition is allowable, stop the vehicle by sliding slowly. For example, when the traffic signal lamp is about to turn into red.

## Maintain the vehicle regularly

The maintenance of vehicles at the authorized dealer of BJEV is the basis to ensure the economy of energy consumption. A well-maintained drive motor can not only improve the economy of energy consumption but also prolong the service life and help maintain the value of vehicles.

Poor maintenance and improper adjustment of power drive system will greatly deteriorate the economy of energy consumption!

## Prepare before driving and drive safely

For the safety of yourself, all passengers. and other road users, the following items should be paid attention to before and during each driving:

- Check the correct function of lighting device and turn signal light.
- Check tire pressure and battery charge.
- Ensure that all window panes have a clear and good view.
- Securely secure items and all luggage in the glove box, trunk.
- The pedals must always be able to be pressed smoothly.
- Select the appropriate child protection system according to weight and figure to protect the children in vehicle.
- Correctly adjust the front seats and mirrors to your body shape.
- Shoes suitable for operating the pedals should be worn.
- The pedal pad in the foot space on the driver's side must ensure that the pedal moves freely and firmly.
- All drivers and passengers should take the correct sitting position before driv-

ing and keep the correct sitting position during driving. For details, please refer to "Driver's Correct Sitting Position" on page 003.

- All drivers and passengers should correctly fasten their seat belts before driving, and keep them properly fastened during driving. For details, see "Fasten seat belts correctly" on P. 12.
- All passengers in the car must sit in their seats and wear seat belts on their seats.
- If the driver's reaction ability is affected by drugs, alcohol or drugs, do not drive the vehicle.
- Never allow behaviors such as operating menus, talking to passengers or telephone calls to distract attention from road conditions.
- The speed and driving mode should always adapt to visibility, weather conditions, road conditions and traffic conditions.
- Obey traffic rules and legal speed limits.
- ▲ Regularly take a rest halfway after driving for a long time, once every two hours at least.
- Place the pet with a suitable device

according to the weight and size of the pet.

#### **↑** WARNING

Always observe traffic regulations and speed limits and drive predictably. Correct evaluation of driving conditions can make you reach your driving destination safely and avoid serious casualties.

Regular maintenance of the vehicle can not only maintain the value of the vehicle but also help to improve the running state and traffic safety. Therefore, please carry out regular maintenance according to the provisions of the Maintenance Item List. When using the car under harsh conditions, the number of maintenance items must be increased or the maintenance period shortened between two regular maintenance. For details, please consult the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

# Driving Instructions for Running-in and Running-in of Vehicles

Drive through the waterlogged water section

### i Hint

Pay attention to the following items when driving through waterlogged sections to avoid damaging vehicles:

- The depth of accumulated water must be found before entering the accumulated water section, and the accumulated water depth shall not exceed 100mm.
- Do not exceed the walking speed.
- Don't park your vehicle in the water, and never reverse your car in the water.
- Oncoming vehicles may stir up waves and raise the water surface.

### **↑** WARNING

If there is water, mud and silt in brake system, it may cause the brake to have a lagging response and thus extend braking distance, so beware of accidents.

- Brake carefully, keep the brake dry and remove the ice on the brake.
- After running through the section of road with water gathered, avoid emergency braking as much as possibly.
- Do not enter water in motor system and power battery system! If
  the vehicle is driving on a low-lying road with accumulated water,
  please pay attention to avoid water
  inflow into the motor system and
  power battery system, otherwise,
  it will seriously damage the motor
  system and power battery system.
  The vehicle fault and damage induced thereof are not covered under warranty.

- After a vehicle runs through the section of road with water gathered, automobile parts of drive system, running system and electrical system may also be severely damaged.
- Do not drive in salt water, because salt water may corrode vehicle parts. All vehicle parts and parts that have come into contact with saltwater must be thoroughly washed with pure water.

## Breaking in tires and brake pads

Drive carefully within the initial 500 km and run in new tires well.

The braking effect of new brake pad within the initial 800km cannot reach the best state. In this stage, the pedal force of brake pedal can be appropriately raised to compensate the braking effect. Remember! During emergency braking, the braking distance of the new brake pad is longer than that of the running-in brake pad.

#### **↑** WARNING

New tires and new brake pads without running-in cannot have the best adhesion characteristics and friction characteristics.

- The new tires doesn't have the best adhesion yet, so you must drive carefully within the initial 500 km. run in the tire well and beware of accidents.
- The new brake pad doesn't have the best friction performance within the initial 800 km, so it must be run in. In this stage, the braking effect is reduced, but the braking effect can be compensated by increasing the pedal force. After replacing the brake pad, the new brake pad must also be run-in according to this.
- When driving, don't be too close to other vehicles or be in a situation where emergency braking is easy to occur. Be especially careful when driving with new tires and new brake pads that have not been run in, so as to prevent the above situation and do not cause accidents!

## Braking effect and braking distance

The braking effect and braking distance are mainly affected by the driving environment, road conditions, and driving methods.

Brake pads with over-limit wear cannot provide effective braking. The wear speed of the brake pad mainly depends on the use conditions and driving mode of vehicles. If the vehicle is often driven in urban areas. short distances, or used as a racing car, it is recommended to increase the frequency of checking the thickness of brake pads during the maintenance period specified in the Maintenance Items List.

After wading, rainstorm or car washing, the brake pad may be damp or frozen (in winter), resulting in the decline of braking effect. In this case, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal gently to make the brake friction generate heat, moisture evaporation, restore the braking effect.

Brake fluid must be changed every two years or 40,000 kilometers, whichever comes first. If the brake fluid stays in the braking system for too long, air resistance may occur in the system pipeline during braking, which seriously deteriorates the braking effect.

#### **↑** WARNING

The brakes may be damp or frozen, or the braking may lag when the vehicle drives on the salted road surface, resulting in a longer braking distance, so care must be taken to prevent accidents.

- When the braking distance is lengthened and the braking system is faulty, the accident rate will increase.
- Press the brake pedal lightly to check the brakes.
- Lightly press the brake pedal to keep the brakes dry or to remove ice or anti-skid salt from the brakes.

#### **↑** WARNING

Overheating of the brakes will reduce the braking effect and increase the braking distance!

- Please take care not to overheat the brake.
- Do not keep pressing the brake pedal to overheat the brake and lengthen the braking distance. Intermittent braking shall be implemented according to road and traffic conditions.

#### **↑** WARNING

- When the vehicle travels downhill, the brake load increases and it is very easy to overheat.
- Do not turn off the starting state
  of the power system and let the
  vehicle slide inertia, because at
  this time, the brake booster does
  not work and the braking distance
  is greatly extended, which is very
  easy to cause accidents.

- The brake fluid must be changed every two years or 40000 km, whichever comes first. If the brake fluid stays in the brake system for too long, air resistance may occur in the system pipeline during braking, which seriously deteriorates the braking effect and driving safety, and may even lead to the failure of the brake system, which is easy to cause accidents!
- After the non-standard front spoiler is installed or the spoiler is damaged, the cooling air flow to the brake will be blocked, resulting in overheating of the brake and deterioration of the braking effect.
- Be sure to read and observe relevant information and warning notes before purchasing accessories.

## 4. Maintenance

Safety maintenance Interior maintenance Exterior maintenance Tires	254		
	277		
		Accessories and Modifications	29 <sup>2</sup>
		Power battery quick-change system	292

## Safety maintenance

## Check and add the car oil and liquid.

## Precautions for safe operation in front engine room

It is strictly forbidden to work in the front engine room when the power system is in the starting state! Be very careful when working in the front engine room or working with the motor!

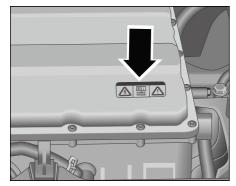


Figure-High voltage warning sign in front engine room

The following items must be observed before working in the front engine room:

- 1. Turn off the power system and prohibit charging.
- 2. Apply parking brake..
- Switch the complete vehicle gear to "P" gear
- 4. Keep children away from vehicles.
- Open the front hood. Do not work in the front engine room if you do not know the operation process and do not have necessary tools/equipment!

Relevant operations shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV. Vehicle oil and consumables such as coolant and battery are constantly being upgraded and improved. BAIC New Energy Special Dealer has mastered the latest development trends of vehicle oil and consumables, so the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV should replace oil and consumables.

The front engine room is a high-risk area!

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The electrical system voltage and power battery voltage in the high-voltage electrical system are fatal! Do not touch high-voltage electrical components, high-voltage cables, or power batteries with warning signs, so as not to cause fatal electric shock!

- Unqualified personnel must not attempt to carry out any maintenance operations on electrical components of high-voltage power systems, orange high-voltage cables, or power batteries. Any operation on the high-voltage power system can only be carried out by the professional technicians of the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV according to the guidance specifications.
- Do not damage or remove the orange high-voltage cable or disconnect it from the high voltage power system.
- Any operation of the high-voltage electric system or power battery must comply with the guidelines of BAIC BJEV.

## **↑** WARNING

All the engine rooms in front of vehicles are high-risk areas, so beware of causing casualties!

- Be sure to operate according to safety operation procedures and do not take risks.
- All operations such as checking and adding oil in the front engine room may cause injury to operators and even cause a fire!
- Personnel who are not familiar with the operation process, have no experience in using tools and do not understand the safety operation regulations are not allowed to work in the front engine room! Otherwise, it is very easy to cause casualty accidents. If you are not sure, it must be handled by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJFV

#### **↑** WARNING

Turn off the starting state of the power system before the operation, and prohibit charging.

#### **MARNING**

- Apply parking brake and operate shift knob to switch the complete vehicle gear to "P" gear.
- Children stay away from vehicles.
- Do not touch the motor parts in hot state, beware of scalding!
- Pay attention to avoid short circuit of electrical system, especially short circuit of battery, and beware of battery explosion!
- Do not touch the radiator fan. Because the fan is controlled by temperature, even after the power system is turned off, the fan may suddenly start on its own.

#### **MARNING**

- Be careful not to leave cleaning cloth or tools in the front engine room.
- If you work under the car, you must be more cautious! Appropriate measures should be taken to prevent the vehicle from moving or supporting the vehicle with suitable supports, to avoid injuring the operators under the vehicle.

#### Note

When replacing and adding vehicle fluid, do not add the wrong fluid. It is necessary to add the fluid with correct variety and specification according to the system function, otherwise, it will definitely lead to functional failure and damage the system!

#### i Hint

Vehicle oil is harmful to the environment! Therefore, it is necessary to regularly check whether there are oil traces and other liquid stains on the bottom of the vehicle and the ground under the vehicle. If any fluid traces and other liquid stains are found, you should check the vehicle at the authorized dealer of BJEV as soon as possible.

## Open the front hood

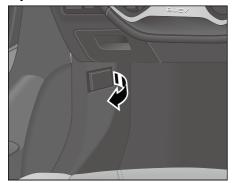


Figure-partial view of driver's foot pit: front engine hood opening handle

Stop the vehicle firmly, apply the parking brake, and pull the opening handle of hood from the driver side foot trim panel. At this time, the main lock of hood is opened, and the hood will pop up slightly.

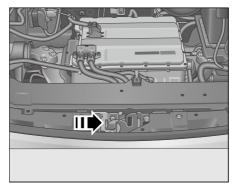


Figure-Front Hood Secondary Lock Opening Handle

Lift the front hood gently, toggle the secondary lock opening handle to the right with your fingers, and release the lock hook to lift the front hood upward.

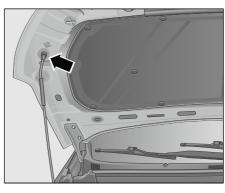


Figure-front hood support rod

Lift the hood to a proper position, pull out the support rod of hood from its fixing buckle. Fix one end of the support rod to the position indicated by the opening (arrow) of the hood inner plate, and the hood can be opened.

#### Close the front hood

Lift the front hood slightly upward, move the strut away, and then secure it into the support rod retaining snap.

Lower the hood to a proper height from the locking position, let the hood fall naturally to be locked, and press the front edge of hood evenly with both hands to ensure that it is locked in place.

After closing the hood, confirm whether it is fully locked by trying to lift the front edge. Otherwise, it is necessary to open the hood to close it again.

#### **↑** WARNING

If the front hood is not closed firmly. the front hood may suddenly open by itself when the vehicle is driving, which will easily lead to accidents!

- After closing the front hood, check whether it is really closed. After closing, the front hood should be flush with the adjacent vehicle body.
- When closing the front hood, care must be taken that no one is within the scope of the front hood.
- If you find that the front hood is not closed when driving, you must stop immediately and close the front hood to quard against accidents.

## Maintenance of charging seat

- It is suggested to clean and maintain the quick and slow charging ports and sealing ring once every 10000 km or once a year (whichever comes first).
- Cleaning process:
- a. Clean the silt in the charging port with a cleaning cloth;
- b. Then use a high-pressure air gun to blow air into the terminal and charging seat to clean dust and sand:
- c. Apply ordinary lubricating "Vaseline" evenly on the surface of the sealing ring;
- d. Please do not pollute live parts such as terminals during the whole maintenance and cleaning process.

## Front hood layout

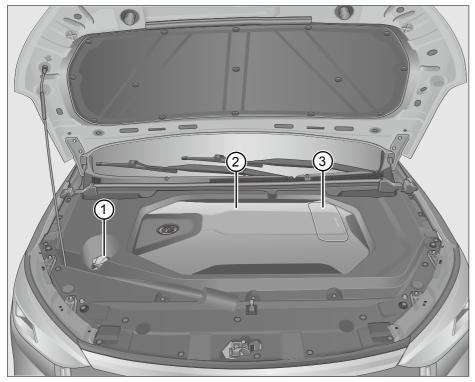


Figure-Front Engine Room List

- Filling port of windshield cleaning liquid storage tank
- 2. Trim panel of front engine room
- B. Battery cover plate

#### Note

As the front engine room is a high-risk area, the users are advised not to disassemble the front engine room trim panel by themselves to avoid unnecessary injury. If you need to disassemble and assemble, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

## Front hood layout\*

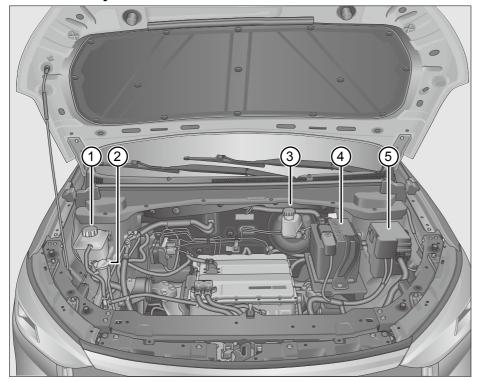


Figure-Front Engine Room List (Remove front engine room trim panel)

- Coolant expansion tank
- Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
- Brake fluid reservoir
- Battery

Front engine room fuse box

## Front hood layout\*

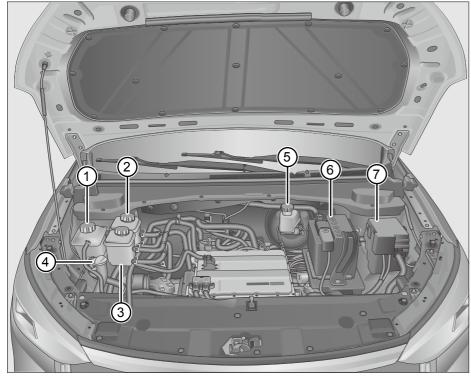


Figure-Front Engine Room List (Remove front engine room trim panel)

- 1. Expansion tank of coolant of motor
- 2. Expansion tank of coolant of power battery
- 3. Expansion tank of coolant of A/C air heating
- 4. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
- 5. Brake fluid reservoir
- 6. Battery
- 7. Electric box of front engine hood

## Front hood layout\*

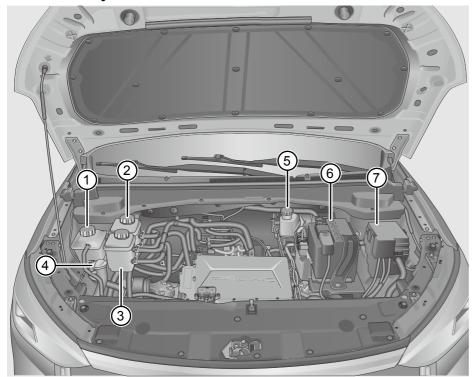


Figure-Front Engine Room List (Remove front engine room trim panel)

- Expansion tank of coolant of motor
- Expansion tank of coolant of power battery
- Expansion tank of coolant of A/C air heating
- Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
- Brake fluid reservoir
- 6. Battery
- Electric box of front engine hood

#### **Brake fluid**

#### Function of brake fluid

The brake fluid is the medium of transmitting power in vehicle hydraulic braking system.

During use, the fluid level in the brake reservoir may drop slightly due to the wear of the brake friction pad. If such a situation is found, the brake fluid level can be used to decide whether to add it or not.

If the brake pedal stroke unexpectedly lengthens or the brake fluid level drops obviously, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection immediately. If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum mark of the reservoir, do not continue driving the vehicle.

#### **∱** WARNING

Do not change the brake fluid according to the cycle stipulated by BAIC BJEV Maintenance, otherwise, the brake system may fail and cause serious accidents.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Brake fluid is corrosive. Keep the container sealed and out of reach of children. If you find accidental swallowing of brake fluid, please seek medical advice immediately.
- Do not touch your skin or eyes with brake fluid. If you do, rinse immediately with plenty of water.
- Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the high temperature motor, or you may catch fire.

#### Brake system fault warning light (1)

If the brake system fault warning light "(1) is lit during driving, it may be that brake fluid is missing or there is a fault in the brake system.

#### **∕ MARNING**

If the waring light is on during driving:

- Stop the vehicle immediately under safe conditions.
- Do not step on the brake pedal repeatedly, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

#### Inspection of brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be checked according to the cycle specified in BAIC BJEV Maintenance Information.

Before checking the brake fluid, it is necessary to remove the front engine room trim panel \* to see the brake fluid reservoir.

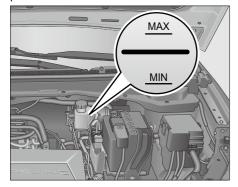


Figure-In the front engine room: brake fluid reser-

After the motor cools, check the brake fluid. MAX—upper mark of brake fluid MIN—lower mark of brake fluid

The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN marks. If the liquid level is lower than the lower limit mark, the brake fluid must be added.

Please carefully read and observe the relevant warning instructions before opening the front cabin cover.

During driving, the brake fluid level will drop slightly due to the wear and automatic adjustment of the brake friction pad. This is a normal phenomenon and there is no need to worry.

#### **∕** MARNING

- Please carefully read and observe the relevant warning instructions before opening the front cabin cover.
- If the brake system warning light does not go out or lights up during driving, it may be that the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. In order to avoid accidents, stop immediately, do not continue driving, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

#### Note

However, if the brake fluid level drops significantly, this indicates the brake system leaks. And contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible to thoroughly check the braking system.

#### Selection of brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed according to the schedule specified in the maintenance information of BJEV. Only doing as specified above can ensure safe driving.

#### i Hint

Brake fluid model: HZY4

Brake fluid filling volume: 0.91

#### Brake fluid replacement

#### Note

Be sure to change the brake fluid according to the cycle specified in BAIC BJEV Maintenance Information.

The brake fluid used in this vehicle is specially developed by BAIC BJEV for the braking system of this vehicle. To ensure the normal operation of the braking system, it is recommended that the special dealer of BAIC BJEV replace the standard brake fluid for you.

The brake fluid is absorbent and absorbs moisture from the surrounding air. If the water content of the brake fluid is too high, it will corrode the braking system and greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid, resulting in the decline of the braking effect. Therefore, it is necessary to replace the brake fluid according to the cycle specified in the maintenance information of BAIC's new energy.

#### **↑** WARNING

Using the used brake fluid or non-genuine one will greatly reduce the braking effect, or even cause the brake system failure!

- Brake fluid packaging containers are marked with brake fluid specifications, and brake fluid meeting the correct specifications must be used.
- · The brake fluid is toxic.
- Do not store the brake fluid in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning! Store the brake fluid in its original sealed container and store it in a safe place. Keep it clear out of the reach of children! Avoid poisoning.

## **∱** WARNING

 The brake fluid must be changed according to the cycle specified in BAIC BJEV maintenance information, because if the brake fluid stays inside the system for a long time, air lock will be produced inside the pipeline of braking system. In this case, it will reduce brake effect and driving safety, and even cause complete failure of braking system and accidents.

#### Note

Due to corrosive effect, the brake fluid spilled on the body paint should be timely removed.

### i Hint

Be sure to collect and dispose of the used brake fluid in accordance with the environmental regulations.

#### Coolant

#### Coolant function

Correct use of coolant can play the role of anti-corrosion, anti-scale, and anti-freezing, which can make the cooling system always in the best working state and ensure the normal working temperature of the driving motor.

It is necessary to improve the antifreeze ability of coolant in the severe cold season. It is suggested to contact the authorized dealer of BJEV to replace with a coolant suitable for the local minimum temperature.

#### Note

- The coolant shall not be mixed with any other coolant not approved by the company, otherwise it may seriously damage the drive motor and cooling system.
- If the coolant in the coolant expansion tank fades and no coolant of other colors is mixed in, the coolant can be replaced regularly as required. If other coolants are mixed in, the coolant must be replaced as soon as possible.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The coolant must be contained in a closed container and must be placed beyond the reach of children.
- Do not store the coolant in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning, The discharged waste coolant should also be treated as such.
- In severely cold climates, to ensure the antifreeze ability of coolant, the appropriate coolant should be replaced according to the ambient temperature, otherwise, the coolant may freeze and cause vehicle damage.

#### i Hint

Waste coolant must be collected and disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

#### Coolant liquid level inspection

Before checking the coolant, remove the front engine room trim panel \* to see the coolant expansion tank.

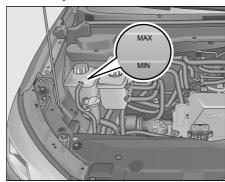


Figure-In the front engine room: coolant expansion tank

After the motor cools, check the coolant level.

MAX—upper mark of coolant

MIN— lower mark of coolant

The coolant level should be between the MAX and MIN marks. If the liquid level is low, add coolant.

The coolant expansion tank is located in the engine room. When the cooling system is cooled and measured, the height of the coolant in the tank shall be maintained between the two marking lines. The cooling system is closed, so the normal coolant loss is very low. A significant drop in coolant level indicates that there is a leak in the cooling system. If this happens, check the cooling system at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV immediately.

#### Coolant addition



Figure - inside the front engine room: coolant expansion tank cover

- If the motor is hot, turn off the drive system and wait for it to cool down.
- To prevent scalding, wrap the expansion tank cover with a thick cloth, and then slowly unscrew the expansion tank cover.
- New coolant must be added.
- After filling, the coolant level must be within the marked range and at least higher than the "Min" mark.
- Re-install and tighten the reserve tank cap.

### **↑** WARNING

Be careful when working in the front engine room..

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- If the motor reaches a warm state or hot state and the cooling system is in a high temperature and high-voltage state, do not unscrew the expansion tank cover, and beware of being scalded by high-temperature steam.

### i Hint

It is recommended to use the coolant of-40 °C specified by BAIC BJEV. Coolant conforming to specifications should be used all year round whether antifreeze is needed or not.

- When the motor is in a hot state. the coolant level may be close to or slightly higher than the marking line on "MAX", which is a normal phenomenon.
- It is suggested to fill the coolant when the motor is cold, but the coolant level shall not exceed the "MAX" mark, otherwise the excessive coolant will overflow when the motor becomes hot.
- If the coolant loss is large, the cold coolant can be added after the motor is cooled, otherwise the motor may be damaged.

## Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades

#### Windshield washer fluid addition

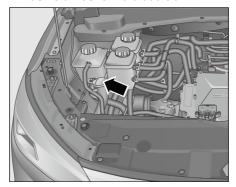


Figure - front engine room: windshield washer fluid reservoir

The windshield washer is supplied with cleaning fluid from the cleaning fluid reservoir in the front engine room. If the liquid level of cleaning fluid is found to be too low, add cleaning fluid to the liquid storage tank in time.

#### **↑** WARNING

Be careful when working in the front engine room..

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Never add coolant or any other additives into the windshield cleaning solution, otherwise stains will be left when cleaning the glass, which will seriously affect the front vision, causing accidents.

Check the reservoir regularly every week. To ensure normal windshield cleaning and prevent freezing in cold weather, please fill the mixture of water and brand detergent. It is best to mix the recommended amount of water and cleaning solution in a separate container before filling, and always follow the instructions on the front of the container.

Do not use antifreeze or vinegar/water solution in the reservoir - antifreeze can damage the paint surface and vinegar can damage the windshield washer pump.

Overflow of windshield washer fluid may cause discoloration of body parts. Please pay attention to avoid overflow, especially when using unadulterated, highly concentrated cleaning solution. If spillage occurs, immediately clean the contaminated surface with water.

#### i Hint

- Please use the windshield cleaning solution specified by BAIC BJEV (the washing solution with a freezing point not higher than 35°).
- Filling amount of windshield washer fluid: 1.8L.

#### Windshield wiper blade replacement

#### **↑** WARNING

- Grease, silicon and petroleum products will weaken the wiping effect of the wiper blade. If there are impurities on the surface, please clean the wiper blades with the special detergent for filling, and check their condition regularly.
- If the rubber is hardened or cracked, or the wiper leaves a slip mark on the windshield or cannot clean an area, the wiper blade needs to be replaced.
- Regularly clean the windshield with approved glass cleaner and ensure that the windshield is thoroughly cleaned before replacing the wiper blade.
- Only use wiper blades of the same specification as the original wiper

#### Note

- The wiper blades must be in good condition.
- To prevent schlieren, wiper blades should be cleaned regularly with a windshield cleaning solution. At the same time, you need to clean the windshield.
- If the weather is cold, check whether the wiper blade is frozen before using the windshield washer to clean the windshield every time. Operate the windshield wiper control lever only when the wiper blade is not interfered with and obstructed.
- When removing the dust on the surface of windshield, do not directly wipe the windshield with a dry rag or duster, because the dust contains a large number of fine sand particles, which will scratch the glass by using above way.

If the wiper blade makes a friction sound when scraping, it may be caused by the following reasons:

- When washing the car in the automatic car washing equipment, hard wax residue is consolidated on the windshield. This friction sound can be eliminated by adding windshield cleaner which can dissolve paraffin wax. Ordinary cleaning solution, which can only dissolve grease, cannot remove this deposit.
- If the wiper blade is damaged, it can also cause friction sound, so replace the wiper blade.
- There is dust or sundries on the outer surface of windshield.
- The positioning angle of wiper arm is incorrect. If this happens, please check and adjust it at at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.
- Wiper blades must be checked regularly and replaced as required, otherwise, the windshield will be damaged.

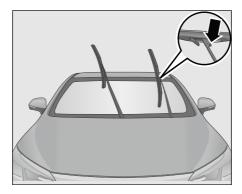


Figure-Wiper Arm Lock Reed

- 1. Lift the wiper blade from the windshield, prv off the decorative cover of the wiper blade, press the locking button, and disengage the wiper blade from the U-joint of wiper arm in the direction of the wiper blade.
- 2. The wiper blade assembly can be installed in reverse order. Please do not power on the whole vehicle until the installation of the new wiper blade is completed. Before the wiper assembly is put back on the windshield, check again that the wiper blades are securely secured.

#### **↑** WARNING

All window glasses should maintain a good view during driving!

- Clean the wiper blades and all window glasses regularly.
- The wiper blade should be replaced once or twice a year.
- Please try to avoid direct wiping on the windshield by the wiper blade, so as to avoid the aging and wear of the weatherstrip and the fuzzing of the window, which will affect the driving safety.

- When removing the wiper blade assembly, you must be careful of the wiper arm to prevent the wiper arm from falling suddenly and damaging the windshield.
- Before the replacement of the wiper blade is completed, please do not power on the whole vehicle, to avoid the sudden operation of the wiper and damage to the windshield and front hood.
- When replacing the wiper blade, pay attention to the protection of the wiper arm U-joint. When removing the wiper blade, wrap it with a soft cloth to avoid scratching the glass.

#### Windshield cleaning nozzle

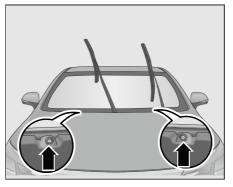


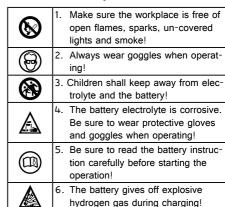
Figure - windshield cleaning nozzle

If there are sundries near the washer nozzle, please clean it in time, otherwise it may affect the normal operation of the windshield washer.

Check whether the nozzle is clean by a scrubber regularly and the injection direction is correct. The windshield washer nozzles have been set during production and do not need to be adjusted. If the water spray pressure is too low or the injection position is incorrect, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance.

#### **Battery**

## Alert symbols and descriptions for operation of the battery



Unless you know the operational process and have proper equipment, do not do any operations on the vehicle electrical system. If there is no absolute certainty, relevant operations shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

## **↑** WARNING

Hazards of injury, corrosion, accident, and fire when operating on vehicle batteries and electricity!

- Do not let acid or lead particles fall into eyes, skin or clothes.
- The acid in the battery is highly corrosive, so be sure to wear protective gloves and glasses during operation. Do not tilt the battery, otherwise acid may overflow from the exhaust hole. If acid splashes into the eyes, rinse with clear water immediately for several minutes and then seek medical advice immediately. If the acid splashes on the skin or clothes, absorb it with a dry cloth immediately, and then rinse it with soapy water and clean water immediately. If you drink acid by mistake, you must seek medical advice immediately.
- Flammable and explosive gas mixture will be produced during battery charging, so the battery should be placed in a well ventilated place during charging.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Open flame, electric spark, strong light and smoking are prohibited. When cables and electrical equipment are handled, avoid the generating electric sparks. Do not short circuit the battery terminal. otherwise, the high-energy spark generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.
- When battery is dismantled, dismantle negative cable first and then positive cable.
- Keep the children away from acid liquor and battery.
- Before battery is reconnected, turn off all electrical equipment. Connect the positive cable first, then the negative cable. Do not connect the wrong cables, otherwise there is a risk of fire!
- It is forbidden to disassemble and install the battery without permission, because in some cases. this operation will cause serious damage to the battery, fuses and electrical components. For operation, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

#### Inspection of battery power

If you drive your car to a long distance, or use your car or battery on hot area for a long time, please regularly inspect battery capacity.

Check the electric quantity of the battery regularly in one of the following service conditions or situations:

- Long mileage vehicles.
- Driving in a hot country or area.
- The battery is too old.

#### **Environmental protection statement**



Batteries contain pollutants. It is illegal

to dispose of batteries together with domestic garbage. Batteries must be collected separately and recycled in an environmentally friendly way.

Please dispose of batteries in an envi-

ronmentally friendly way. Send the depleted battery to the authorized dealer of BJEV or a special waste battery recycling station.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety warning and instructions about the operation of battery.
- Do not open the battery. Beware of chemical burns and battery explosion.
- Damaged or leaked battery isn't allowed to connect. Damaged or leaked battery should be recovered according to law of environment protection.
- Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, un-covered lights and smoke! When operating cables and electrical equipment, attention must be paid to prevent electric sparks and static electricity, and do not short circuit the battery terminal, otherwise, the high-energy electric sparks generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.

#### Operation in Winter

There are particularly strict requirements for the use of on-board battery in winter, because the starting power provided by the battery at low temperature is lower than that at normal temperature. Therefore, we suggest that before the beginning of the cold season, it is best to check the on-vehicle battery at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV, and charge or replace it if necessary. In particularly cold weather conditions, it takes longer to charge the battery. If the battery is not charged enough, the battery electrolyte will freeze and damage the battery. To ensure the efficiency of the battery, it should be checked regularly.

If the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment for several weeks or more, you should remove the on-vehicle battery and store it in a room with normal temperature to protect the battery from low temperature damage.

## Battery charging and battery replacement

Do not perform operation on the battery unless you are professional enough.

If you often drive for short distances or store your vehicle for an extended period of time, maintain your battery more frequently. If the battery is damaged or capacity is insufficient, it may be very difficult to start a car. If this happens, it is recommended to charge or replace the battery at c

#### Note

Only electrical equipment that meets the national electromagnetic compatibility specifications and is approved by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV can be used.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- When the battery is connected to the vehicle, do not charge the battery, which may seriously damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- If the battery is frozen, do not try to charge the battery.

If the battery is used for a long time, it may not be able to maintain the charging efficiency in a new state. If the vehicle is parked for a long time, or is frequently driven for a short distance, or operates in a cold environment, the battery needs to be charged regularly.

During charging, the battery will generate corrosive acid volatile gas and current that will cause serious damage to the electrical system. Therefore, observe the followings during charging:

- Before charging, it is necessary to disconnect the terminal from the vehicle and remove the battery. Charging the battery with connected wires will damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before turning on the charger switch, make sure that the charging cable of the battery charging equipment is safely connected to the terminal of the battery. Once the charging equipment is turned on, do not move the charging cable.
- Pay attention to protect your eyes when charging.
- Maintain good ventilation around the top of the battery. Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight (the battery will produce flammable hydrogen when charging).
- After charging is finished, turn off the battery charging equipment before disconnecting the charging cable from the battery terminal.

If the "start/stop button" is still in the "RUN" position for a long time after the drive system is turned off, or the parking indicator is on for a long time, the battery will continue to discharge, resulting in battery power loss.

#### Note

In cold conditions, batteries take longer to charge. After charging, the battery needs to be left for more than 1 hour before putting on the vehicle again, in order to dissipate flammable gases and prevent fire and explosion.

Only the same type of battery can be replaced and conform to the original specifications. Other batteries may have different dimensions or different terminal positions, which may lead to battery damage, leakage, or fire.

When replacing the battery, make sure that the battery is installed correctly. Ensure that the battery and pressure plate are properly fixed to prevent the battery from moving in accident or emergency braking.

The genuine battery can meet the vehicle maintenance, performance and safety requirements.

Read and follow the safety warnings related to operating the battery before starting work.

## Interior maintenance

#### Note

- Never clean the instrument panel and the airbag module surface with solvent-containing detergent. Solvent-containing detergents can penetrate and cause pores on the surface of the instrument panel and airbag cover, resulting in loose surfaces of the instrument panel and airbag cover. When the airbag is released, the broken plastic may seriously injure the people in the car!
- Never treat the leather materials with solvents (such as gasoline, turpentine), floor waxes, shoe polish or the like.
- Do not expose your vehicle to intense sunlight for long periods of time to prevent leather or similar items from fading. If your vehicle needs to be parked outdoors for a long time, please cover it with leather to prevent it from being directly exposed to sunlight.

#### Note

- Objects with sharp edges (such as zippers, metal buttons, rivets, etc.) may leave permanent scratches or scratches on the leather surface.
- Do not remove the seat belt to clean it.
- Do not clean the seat belt with chemical cleaning agent, because chemical cleaning agent will damage the seat belt base.
- Never get corrosive liquid on the seat belts.
- Regularly check the status of the seat belt. If any damage on the seat belt base, seat belt connecting part, auto retractor or seat belt buckle is found, it is necessary to replace them at the authorized dealer of BJEV.

## Cleaning and maintaining the instrument and plastic parts

Scrub the surface of the instrument panel and plastic parts with a clean damp cloth.

Otherwise, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

#### **∕**•• WARNING

Do not clean the surface of the instrument panel and airbag module with cockpit spray and solvent-containing cleaning agent, which may loosen the cover surface of the instrument panel and airbag assembly. When the airbag is triggered, the broken plastic may seriously injure the people in the car.

## Cleaning and maintaining the carpet

Please frequently clean dust on the carpet with the cleaner Periodically shampoo the carpet with the foam-type cleaner to keep it clean.

#### Note

- Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.
- It is strictly forbidden to add foam detergent into water. Make sure that the rug is dry.

## Cleaning and maintenance of leather

For general leather, the following methods can be used for cleaning and maintenance:

- 1. Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently.
- 2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water.
- 3. Dry it with another dry soft cloth. If the above cleaning is not enough to clean the stain.

If further cleaning is needed, use a soap specifically for leather, such as saddle soap.

#### Note

- After you wipe the leather using the special detergent, wipe it down as soon as possible with a soft, dry cloth.
- Don't place a soft cloth dampened with detergent in any part of the interior for an extended period so as not to cause the resin or fiber of the interior braid to fade or break.

## Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts

Please keep your seat belt in good condition at all times, which is especially important for safe driving. Here are some maintenance methods for seat belts:

- 1. Pull the seat belt out slowly and keep it in the pulled-out position.
- 2. Wipe off the stains on seat belts with soft brush and neutral soap water, and dry with a dry soft cloth.
- 3. After seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts to avoid damage to the seat belt webbing, affecting its function.
- When replacing the belt, be sure to use a new belt of the same model and structure.
- Prevent foreign matter or liquids from entering the seat belt buckles. Failure to do so can cause the buckles and the belts to function abnormally.
- · Do not remove or modify seat belt.
- The condition of all seat belts in the car must be checked regularly. In case of damage to the seat belt base, connecting device, winding mechanism or lock catch, it must be repaired and replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible.

#### Note

- Only after seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts; otherwise, the seat belt retractor will be damaged.
- You should check the condition of your seat belts regularly to keep them clean and ensure they function properly.

## **Exterior maintenance**

#### Note

- To avoid damage to the braking function, always prevent the brakes from being damped or frozen.
- When you clean the bottom of the vehicle, the lower side of the fenders (wheel covers) and the wheel cover boards, be careful to prevent your hand from being scratched by sharp-edged metals.
- The Start/Stop button must be turned off when cleaning the vehicle.
- Do not use coarse sponge or corrosive cleaning products to clean the car body paint, the paint is in danger of damage!
- Do not cluster nozzles to clean tires! Even if the spray distance is large and the spray time is very short, the tires can be damaged.

#### Note

- It is recommended to wax the vehicle after it has been driven for 6 months.
- Do not wax the vehicle windows.
- Do not clean the headlight surface with any sharp objects, which may damage the protective paint surface and form cracks in the headlight.
- Pay attention when cleaning wheels: damp, ice, and anti-skid salt scattered on the road will affect the braking effect.

#### Car washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty. Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

When cleaning vehicles through the automatic car washer, please follow the instructions of the car washer operator.

#### Note

- Although the body paint is strong to withstand the flushing from the automatic car washer, pay attention to its impact on the paint. The washer structure, detergent, fresh water filtration, and type of wax solvent which do not meet the specified requirements are likely to cause damage to the paint.
- The "Start/Stop button" must be turned off before washing the car.

#### Automatic vehicle washer

The vehicle paint is durable. Generally, the vehicle is allowed to be cleaned in the automatic vehicle wash equipment. Impact on vehicle paint largely depends on the structure of vehicle washing device and the type of vehicle washing water filter, detergent and maintaining agent, etc. If the vehicle paint is dull or even scratched after washing, immediately notify the car wash operator. If necessary, replace another car washer with a different structure to clean the vehicle.

#### To manually clean vehicle

If you clean the vehicle manually, please follow the following methods:

- Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
- Prepare a bucket of water and mix the water with special washing detergent.
- Wash the vehicle, using a soft cloth, sponge or bristle brush. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.
- Finally, rinse the wheels, doorsills and others. When washing, replace the sponge or soft cloth.
- 5. After you finish scrubbing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with a plenty of water.
- 6. When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a chamoisl.

Use extra care to wash the vehicle with a high-pressure washer. Follow the instructions and requirements which come on with the high-pressure washer. Pay particular attention to the operating pressure and the spray rinsing distance.

#### Note

Check the body for road tar and other stains. Remove these stains with tar remover. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. As you dry the vehicle, check it for chips and scratches. If found, it should be repaired at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

#### **↑** WARNING

Water, ice and antiskid salt in the Brake system can cause reaction retardation of the brakes, resulting in a longer braking distance which is likely to lead to accidents.

- Before driving, gently step on the brake pedal to detect the brake reaction.
- Try to avoid emergency braking before removing the ice or antiskid salt from the brakes. Apply the brake with extra care to avoid traffic accidents.

## **↑** WARNING

- Ensure that the relevant information and warning instructions are carefully read and observed before using the high-pressure cleaner.
- When washing the car by hand, pay attention to personal safety, pay special attention to the bottom of the vehicle and the inside of the wheel cover, so as to prevent hands and arms from being hurt by sharp parts.
- Never use the high-pressure cleaner to clean the bottom and front engine room of the vehicle, otherwise it may cause water to enter the motor system and power battery system, which may seriously damage these systems and cause fatal accidents.

## Polishina

Regular waxing helps protect your vehicle body's paint and keep the body bright and clean. If waxing, pay attention to the following:

- Waxing can only be carried out after drying the exterior of the whole vehicle.
- You should use a quality paint protective wax.
- In order to protect body paint surface, it is suggested to high quality hard wax every year to protect paint surface from being corrosive due to poor environment and withstand light mechanical scratch.

#### High quality wax type

Body wax

Waxes used to protect paint surfaces from external environmental damage such as sun exposure and air pollution, generally used in new cars.

Polishing paste

Polishes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They are mainly used to restore the shine to paint.



Do not wax and polish the body surface in a dusty environment.

## **Polishing**

Polishing is needed only when vehicle paint becomes dim and more gloss can not be reached by using waxing materials. If the used polishing agent does not contain preservative composition, vehicle must be waxed subsequently.



Unpolished parts and plastic parts can not be treated with polishing agent or hard wax.

### Vehicle paint damages

Slight vehicle paint damages, such as scrapes, scratches or stone bruises should be covered by vehicle paint before rusting.

If vehicle has been rusted already, thoroughly remove rust, Apply anti-corrosion primer and covering paint at the rusted position. These work should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

## Cleaning and maintaining the external plastic parts

In general, clean the external plastic parts with fresh water, soft cloth and bristle brush. If cleaning is needed further, use the recommended special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

#### Note

Do not use solvent-containing cleaning materials when cleaning plastic parts, otherwise, it will easily cause damage to the plastic parts.

## Maintenance of chromium-plated parts

Chromium-plated parts can be cleaned with a damp cloth, and then polished with a soft dry cloth. If the results are not good enough, use the maintenance agents for chromium.

The stain and dirt layer on the chromium-plated parts can be removed with the maintenance agents for chromium. Regular use of the maintenance agents for chromium can prevent the dirt layer from forming on the surface. When the maintenance agent for chromium is used, apply it onto the whole surface evenly and completely.

## Window glass and rearview mirror cleaning

Clean the window glass and mirrors with alcoholic glass cleaner, and then dry glass surface with a clean, lint-free, soft cloth or chamois towel.

#### Note

- Do not wipe the window glass and exterior mirrors with deerskin that has been brushed against the body paint, otherwise the residual wax on the deerskin will cause the glass surface to become blurred.
- If there is residual rubber, grease and silicone on the glass, remove it using the special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

#### Cleaning residual wax

After the body surface is maintained, remove the residual wax on the glass with the special cleaner and a clean cloth to protect the wipers from being scratched.

#### Clear away the snow covered

Remove the snows on the windows and mirrors using a bristle brush.

#### Remove ice deposits

Deicing spray can be used to remove ice and ice removal shovels, but special care must be taken so as not to damage parts and remove ice in the same direction when used.

#### Note

- Do not scratch the window glass and rearview mirror back and forth.
- Do not use warm water or hot water to remove the ice and snow on the window glass and rearview mirror, otherwise the glass may burst.

### Cleaning of windshield wiper blade

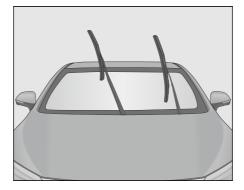


Figure - windshield wiper

The steps of cleaning operation are as follows:

- Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.
- 2. Only hold the blade holder during operation.
- 3. Carefully wipe off the dust and dirt on the wiper blade and the windshield surface with a soft cloth.
- 4. After cleaning, gently put the wiper arm to the original position.

#### Note

- Replace the damaged blade in time.
- A new wiper blade surface is coated with a layer of graphite which can make the wiper blade to move smoothly without scratching noise. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise will rise, and replace the wiper in time.
- In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blades are frozen against the windshield before operating them. Otherwise, once the wiper is started, the wiper blade and wiper motor will be damaged.

### Maintaining the sealing strips

Frequent and appropriate protection of the rubber sealing strips for the doors, windows and other parts can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. This can also improve the leakproofness, allow the door to be opened easily and reduce the impact sound of closing the doors. At the same time, it is not easy to be frozen in winter.

Maintenance operation:

- Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip.
- 2. Apply the special protective agent to the rubber sealing strips regularly.

# Cleaning and maintaining the wheels

Regular maintenance of wheels can keep beautiful, and at the same time, anti-skid salt and braking wear debris on wheels should be removed regularly, which can keep the smoothness of wheel surface and prolong its service life.

Every two weeks:

- Remove the antiskid salt and wear debris from the wheels.
- Clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.

Every three months:

Apply the high-quality hard wax to the aluminum alloy wheels.

#### **MARNING**

- Be sure to clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.
- Do not clean the wheels with the auto polishing agent or other abrasive.
- If the protective clear-coat of the wheels is damaged, be sure to repair it in time.
- Using the high-pressure washer may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, causing casualty.
- Never clean the tires with the cluster nozzles. Even a long-distance cleaning for a short period of time may cause damage to the tires, causing traffic accidents.

### **Baseplate protection**

The bottom of the vehicle has been protected to reduce the degree of chemical and mechanical damage. However, the damage of the protective layer is inevitable during the driving of the vehicle. It is suggested to check the protective layer of the bottom and chassis of the vehicle at regular intervals, preferably in late spring and early autumn, and repair and anticorrosion treatment if necessary. The authorized dealer of BJEV has the necessary materials and equipment to provide suitable maintenance works.

### Clean the front engine room

Turn off the power system before cleaning the front engine room!

Do not clean the front engine room with water, only wipe it with a cleaning cloth, and be extra careful when cleaning the front engine room.

#### **Anti-corrosion Treatment**

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the front engine room has been treated with anticorrosion.

In winter, vehicles often drive on salt-sprinkled roads, so good anti-corrosion treatment is particularly important. In order to prevent the anti-skid salt from corroding the vehicle, the whole front engine room must be thoroughly cleaned before and after the salt spraying.

If the front engine room is cleaned with grease removal agent or by others, the anti-corrosion coating may be removed. Therefore, all surfaces, gaps, joints and components of the front engine room must be treated with anti-corrosion treatment after cleaning.

#### **↑** WARNING

The front-engine room is a high-risk area, so you must be extra careful when working in the front engine room to prevent scratches, scalds and accidents, and fires! Personnel without professional qualifications, unfamiliar with operation procedures and safety operation regulations shall not work in the front engine room.

#### **MARNING**

- Before working in the front engine room, be sure to carefully read the relevant warning instructions and instructions for safe operation in the front engine room.
- Before opening the front nacelle cover, the "start/stop button" must be closed and the parking brake must be applied.
- When cleaning, be careful not to scratch hands and arms by sharp edges and corners of metal parts.

#### i Hint

- Cleaning cloth used to wipe residual oil and grease when cleaning the front engine room shall not be treated as domestic garbage. Therefore, it is best to clean the front engine room by the special distributor of BAIC New Energy or a suitable service station.
- After shutting down the powertrain or exiting charging mode, wait at least 5 minutes before opening the front hood.

### **Cavity anticorrosion treatment**

All vehicle cavities susceptible to corrosion hazards have been durable protected by BJEV. Anticorrosive treatment requires neither inspection nor follow-up treatment. If hard wax drips from the cavity due to external high temperature, the hard wax can be removed by washing with a plastic scraper and gasoline.

### **Tires**

Defective tires may cause driving risks! If the tire is damaged, excessively worn or has abnormal pressure, please do not drive the vehicle, and contact the the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for maintenance as soon as possible.

Please pay close attention to the state of the tire when driving, and regularly check the tread and sidewall for deformation (bulges), scratches, abnormal wear, cracks, nails, etc.

The most common causes of tire defects:

- Striking or rubbing the shoulder;
- Drive through the deep pit on the road;
- The air pressure is lower or higher.

#### Note

Beware of tires being eroded by grease and other vehicle fluids.

### **Tire Storage Conditions**

Store the removed wheel and tire in a cool and dry place. You'd better store them in a shaded place without direct sunlight.

### Tire pressure

Correct tire pressure can prolong the service life of tires, and at the same time ensure the best coordination of driving comfort, economy, and road handling.

When the tire pressure is too low, it will aggravate tire wear, which will greatly affect the road handling and economy of vehicles, and increase the danger of tire failure. Excessive tire pressure will lead to unstable driving and uneven tire wear, thus reducing the service life of tires.

Check the tire pressure at least once a week. During inspection, the tire must be in cold. Cold tire refers to that the vehicle stops driving for more than three hours or travels for less than 1.6 km. As long as the vehicle travels for 1.6 km, the tire can be fully heated, thus affecting the tire pressure.

The pressure in the hot tire is bound to rise. If it is necessary to check the tire pressure when the tire is hot (the pressure should rise by  $0.2 \sim 0.5$  bar after the vehicle has been driven for a while), do not deflate the tire in order to make the tire pressure meet

the standard.

### How to check tire pressure

The tires can be checked with a high-quality tire pressure gauge. It is impossible to determine whether the tire pressure is normal only by visual inspection. For example, the radial tire looks normal even if it is underinflated. Check the inflation pressure of the tire when it is cold.

Remove the valve dust cap from the tire valve core, press the tire pressure gauge firmly on the valve, and the tire pressure gauge will display the tire pressure. If the cold tire inflation pressure meets the recommended pressure value on the tire and loading information label, no adjustment is required. If the pressure is too low, continue to inflate to the standard value. If the pressure is too high, the excess gas can be discharged by pressing the valve core to meet the standard value.

For tire pressure standards, see "tire information" on page 289.

After inspection, be sure to install the valve dust cap back on the valve core. The valve dust cap prevents dust and moisture from entering the inside of the tire.

### Tyre puncture

Your vehicle is equipped with tubeless tires. If the tires are punctured by sharp objects, the tires may not have obvious air leakage. If you find this happening, slow down immediately and drive carefully, or repair as soon as possible.

This type of puncture will cause the tire pressure to decrease, so it is very important to check the tire pressure regularly. Punctured or damaged tires must be repaired immediately or replaced as soon as possible.

### Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often difficult to be found. If abnormal vibration or deviation of vehicles is found during driving, it indicates that there may be hidden damage to a certain tire. In this case, tire inspection should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible.

#### **↑** WARNING

You cannot get the adhesion from a new tire during the first 500 km, so, drive your vehicle at a moderate speed with care to avoid accidents.

- The tire which has not been run in or has been damaged provides insufficient adhesion, directly affecting the braking effect.
- You cannot continue driving after the tire is damaged, because the damaged tire may burst during driving, resulting in traffic accidents, injury, even death.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Tire pressure must comply with specifications; otherwise, it may cause accidents. If the tires are underinflated, continuous high-speed driving will exacerbate tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire peeling off or burst.
- Do not use any tire which is damaged or worn down to its wear indicators. Be sure to replace it timely.
- Try to avoid using a tire more than six years old. If necessary, be sure to drive at low speed with extra care.
- Do not use any old wheel and tire of dubious background under any circumstances. Such wheel and tire, which can be damaged invisibly, will cause loss of control while driving, resulting in accidents.
- When the vehicle is running, if you feel it vibrates abnormally or pulls to one side, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the tires for damage.

#### 4

### Inflating valve

Keep the valve cap firmly tightened to prevent dust from entering the valve. When checking tire pressure, check the valve for air leakage (it is best to use the soap method to see if there are bubbles).

#### i Hint

Add an appropriate amount of household detergent in water and apply it on the valve to observe whether there are bubbles. If there are gas bubbles, it indicates that there is air leakage.

## Tire inspection and transposition

Tyre transposition should be carried out every 8,000 to 13,000 km.

Rotate tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment provided that abnormal wear is found. Meanwhile, also check whether tires or wheels are damaged.

#### i Hint

Regular tire rotation is aimed at making all vehicle tires be evenly worn.

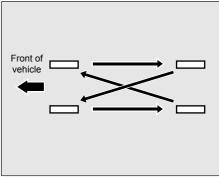


Figure- front and rear tire rotation

When tires are rotated, make sure to follow correct rotation mode as shown in figure below.

After tires are rotated, adjust inflation pressure of front and rear tires according to tire and load information volume label. For details on adjusting tire pressure, see "How to Check Tire Pressure" on page 284. Make sure all wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

#### **MARNING**

Corrosion or dirt on the wheels or wheel connectors can loosen the wheel nuts, causing the wheels to fall off and causing traffic accidents. Therefore, when replacing the wheel, any rust or dirt at the connection between the wheel and the wheel must be removed. In case of emergency, it can be removed with a cloth or paper towel, but if necessary, it is also necessary to remove all rust or dirt with a scraper or wire brush.

### When should a new tyre be replaced

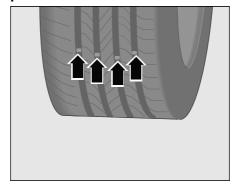


Figure - tire tread wear marks

The original tire has wear marks, which are distributed on the circumference of the tire at the bottom of the tread pattern. When the tread is worn to 1.6 mm, the mark will appear on the surface of the pattern, leaving a continuous rubber mark on the ground across the entire width of the tire, with a total of 6 indication points along the circumference.

#### i Hint

If the tire is worn unevenly (only on one side of the tire) or excessively, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV for wheel alignment inspection.

If there is one of the following conditions, the tire shall be replaced as well:

- Tire wear indicator marks have been worn.
- You can see the cord or cord fabric in the tire rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, and the crack is deep enough to see the cord fabric or cord.
- The tire is bulged, swelled or layered.
- The tire is punctured, scratched or otherwise damaged, and the size and location of the damage are difficult to repair.

#### Wheel balance

The tires were properly balanced by the factory. The balance of your tires is dependent on many factors which can cause wheel imbalance and front-wheel shimmy. Therefore, the wheels should be rebalanced in time.

#### Note

- You should timely treat and balance the unbalanced tires. Failure to do so can cause the steering system, suspension system and tires to wear out faster.
- The dynamic balance of wheels must also be recalibrated after replacing tires.

### **Incorrect Wheel Alignment**

Misalignment of wheel alignment will lead to uneven tire wear, thus reducing driving safety. If excessive or uneven tire wear is found, wheel alignment inspection should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV as soon as possible.

### Replacement of rim

Rims that are bent, cracked or severely rusted or corroded should be replaced. If the wheel nut is often loose, replace the wheel and wheel nut. If the tire leaks, it should be replaced. In case of any of the above situations, repair should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.

The authorized dealer of BJEV knows which kind of rim should be used. The load capacity, diameter, width, and eccentricity of the new rim should be the same as those of the original wheel, and the installation method should be the same.

If you need to replace the rim, you should only use the original new accessories of BAIC BJEV to replace it, to ensure that the rim matches your vehicle.

#### **∕ MARNING**

It is very dangerous to use improper rims, which will affect the braking and handling performance of the vehicle, causing tire leakage, thus resulting in the vehicle out of control. It may cause an accident and cause injury to you or others.

The use of rims with inconsistent specifications will also cause problems in bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aiming, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and the clearance between tires or tire chains and the body and chassis.

It is also dangerous to replace the vehicle with used rims. You can't know how old rims have been used and how many miles they have traveled, and they may suddenly break down and cause accidents. If you need to replace the rim, you must use the new original rim of BAIC BJEV.

#### Tire information

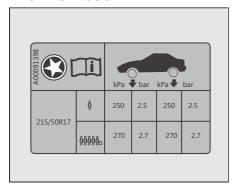


Figure-Tire information

There is a data sign on the tire information under the left B-pillar lock, which should be inflated according to the tire pressure specified on the data sign.

### Buy a new tire



Figure-Tire related information on tire sidewall Check the tire and tire information labels on vour vehicle to find out the tire model and size you need.

#### **MARNING**

Mixing tires can cause the vehicle to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or models (radial tires and Bias belted tires), you will not be able to operate the vehicle normally and cause accidents. Using tires of different sizes may also damage the vehicle. Therefore, all wheels must use the same size and model.

#### Snow chain

Do not install anti-skid chains without permission of BJEV, which may cause damage to braking components.

Improper snow chains can damage vehicle tires, rims, suspension, brakes or body. Only use Snow chains recommended by the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV and passed the inspection. When using, please pay attention to the following requirements:

- The snow chains can only be installed on the front wheels:
- Please observe the tensioning instructions for the installation of anti-skid chains and the speed limits for different road conditions:
- The vehicle speed should not exceed 50km/h.

To avoid tire damage and excessive tire chain wear, remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

### In the event of a puncture

Tire burst is not common during driving, especially when tires are maintained. If the tire runs out, it is likely to leak slowly. However, in case of tire burst, the phenomena and suggested corresponding measures are as follows:

If one of front wheels has punctured, the drag effect of the flat tire will cause the vehicle to run off to that side. At this time. release the accelerator pedal immediately and hold the steering wheel tightly. Turn the vehicle to stay in the original lane, and lightly press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

If the rear wheel has a flat tire, release the accelerator pedal. Turn the steering wheel in the direction you want the vehicle to travel to maintain control of the vehicle. It may be bumpy and noisy, but you can still control the steering, gently press the brake pedal to stop, and park the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

### Accessories and Modifications

When the vehicle leaves the factory, data labels and signs are pasted on the front wall of the front engine room, B-pillar and other components, which are marked with important data and information about the use of the vehicle. Do not remove or damage such labels and signboards. Always keep the data and information on the labels and signboards clear and readable.

This vehicle is designed with the latest safety technique to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the vehicle's excellent characteristics, before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to consult the authorized dealer of BAIC BJFV.

We recommend you always use the accessories and parts which have been designed and approved for BAIC BJEV. We are not responsible for any part not manufactured by BAIC BJEV.

#### **↑** WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

If the alarm device, transceiver radio communication equipment, and low-power sound system are correctly installed, it will not interfere with the computer control system on the vehicle.

Before installing any accessory:

Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.

### **Modifying Your Vehicle**

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-BAIC BJEV components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability. For example:

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed. BAIC BJEV recommend you always use the approved accessories and spare parts with strictly-verified adaptability, reliability and safety.
- Improper maintenance or modifications can weaken the protection from airbags, cause the system failure and fatal accidents. Do not install or connect the beverage cup holder, phone holder and other accessories onto the cover of airbag module or in the range of action of airbags.
- Improper operation or modification of the vehicle will affect the function of the airbag system and cause serious casualties.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Do not install BAIC BJEV wheels and tires.
- Modifying the front of the vehicle and the front engine room can deteriorate pedestrian protection performance of the vehicle and violate the road regulations.

### Power battery quickchange system

For the quick-change models, the quick-change mechanism should be inspected and maintained regularly to prolong the service life, and the power exchange device should be inspected regularly. It is recommended to change the power every 200 times or 20000km or 3 months, whichever comes first.

For quick-change models, it is necessary to check and maintain the quick-change connectors regularly to prolong the service life and ensure the reliability and sealing effectiveness of the connectors. It is recommended to check the quick-change connector and gasket every 500 times or 50000km or 6 months, whichever comes first, to check whether the appearance of the quick-change connector and gasket is normal, whether the size meets the design requirements and whether the gasket is damaged.

To ensure the reliability of power exchange, it is necessary to change power at least once a month at the power exchange station, and check, clean, and maintain the quick-change system after more than one month.

### 5. Accident Handling

Oriver's tools	294
Fuse replacement	298
Replace the bulbs	306
/ehicle lifting	306
Emergency traction	307

### **Driver's tools**

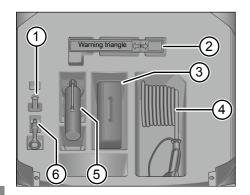


Figure-in-vehicle tools

- 1. Wheel nut cap knockout
- 2. Warning triangle
- 3. power bank \*
- 4. AC charging pile slow charging cable
- 5. Tire emergency repair agent
- 6 Tow Hook

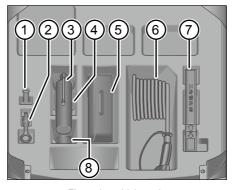


Figure-in-vehicle tools

- 1. Wheel nut cap knockout
- 2. Tow Hook
- 3. Tire emergency repair agent
- V2I discharge connection \* (under tyre emergency patch)
- power bank \*
- 6. AC charging pile slow charging cable
- Warning triangles
- 8. V2V charging connection\*

### Tire repair device

### Remove the automatic tire repair device



Figure - Trunk Floor Mats

- Open the trunk lid.
- . Take out the trunk carpet.

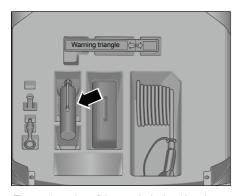


Figure - Location of tire repair device (the picture only takes R500 model as an example)

#### 3. Take out the tire repair device

#### **Preparations**

If you find a flat tire, drive slowly to a flat and safe place to avoid further damage to the tire and rim. Simultaneously turn on the hazard warning lights (double flash). If possible, place a hazard warning triangle sign or yellow light 50 to 150 meters behind the vehicle to remind the rear to approach the vehicle.

#### Repair of air-leaking tire

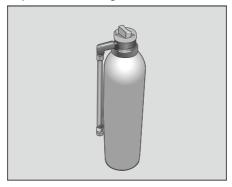


Figure- Tire emergency repair agent Pay attention to the following items when repairing tires:

- Please choose a safe place to park and stay away from the main road.
- Please ask the passengers to get off and wait in a safe place away from other traffic flows.

#### How to use the patch

- Take out the foreign object that causes the tire puncture (if it is difficult to remove, do not take it out), turn the puncture position to the bottom of the tire, and shake the repair agent well.
- Clean the tire valve. If possible, it is better to turn the valve position to the position of 10 to 2 o'clock on the clock. Tighten the connector on the connecting pipe to the valve. After confirming that it is firm, open the safety seal.
- Hold the tank vertically with one hand and rotate the switch knob by 90° in the "RUN" direction with the other hand. The repair agent will automatically fill the tire. After filling is completed. if there is any overflow of repair agent, washed it away quickly. If you need to stop filling during use, just turn the switch knob 90 degrees in the "OFF" direction, then unscrew the interface from the valve and screw on the valve cap.

#### / WARNING

- After the tire is repaired, the vehicle should be started immediately, and the vehicle should be driven for 10-20 kilometers at a speed not exceeding 45 kilometers per hour. To make the repair agent evenly distributed in the tire, the filling air pressure is gradually released. Find the nearest car service station within 24 hours and go to the authorized dealer of BJEV to replace or repair the faulty tire.
- Emergency tire repair agent should not be used to repair large perforation or sidewall perforation; Nor can it be used for tires that have been removed from the rim.
- The emergency repair agent is designed to get you home safely. It is not a permanent tire repair scheme. The punctured tire should be repaired or replaced according to the severity of perforation. It is not applicable to perforation greater than 5 mm and sidewall perforation.

### Warning triangle

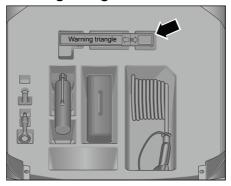


Figure - Location of warning triangle (the picture only takes R500 model as an example)

The warning triangle is located in the toolbox under the floor mat of the luggage compartment. Take the warning triangle out of the toolbox and unfold it to use.

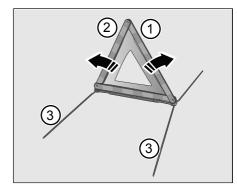


Figure - expanded warning triangle

When in use, open the two folds ① and ② of the triangular warning board and buckle the locking mouth at the upper end. Pull open the bottom four brackets ③ , place the brackets on the ground behind the vehicle, and make the triangle warning sign reflect backward.

#### Note

According to the national related laws and regulations, use emergency triangle correctly.

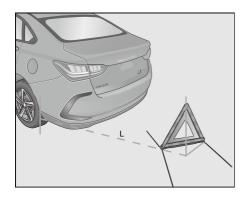


Figure-Placement distance of triangular warning signs

	General high- way	High-Way
Placement distance L	50-100m	≥150m

#### i Hint

This is only a reference value. Please place the triangle warning sign at the distance specified by traffic regulations.

### Fire extinguisher (self-purchased) \*

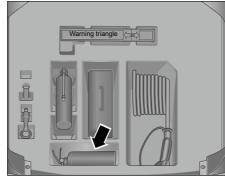


Figure - Location of fire extinguisher (the picture only takes R500 model as an example)

This car is not equipped with fire extinguishers, which need to be purchased by users themselves.

#### Note

Please strictly follow the instructions on the fire extinguisher and check or update it regularly.

### **Reflective Vest**

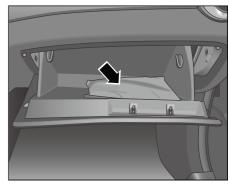


Figure - Storage location of reflective vest (the picture only takes R500 model as an example) This car is equipped with reflective vest, which is stored in glove box.

### **Fuse replacement**

# Front engine room electrical box and instrument panel electrical box

A fuse is a simple circuit breaker that protects the vehicle's electrical equipment by preventing the electrical circuit from exceeding the load.

When an electrical device protected by a fuse stops working, it may be caused by a blown fuse.

Check for disconnection within the fuse by removing the suspect fuse from the electrical box.

If the fuse is blown, please replace it with a fuse of the same specification or a slightly lower grade.

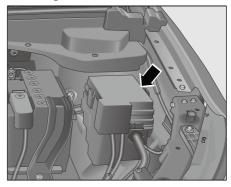
#### Dashboard fuse box



Figure-fuse box in the dashboard

The dashboard electrical box is located inside the storage box at the lower left of the dashboard.

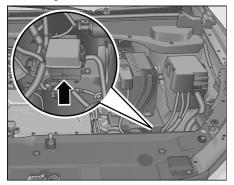
#### Front engine room electronic box 1



Front engine room electronic box 1

The front compartment electronic box 1 is located on the left side of the battery.

#### Front engine room electronic box 2



Front engine room electronic box 2 The front engine room electrical box 2 is

located in front of the battery.

#### **Fuse Color**

In each electrical box (electrical box refers to instrument panel electrical box and front engine room electrical box). The fuse uses color as code to identify the amperage as follows:

Amperage	Color	Model	
5A	Dark brown	MINI	
7.5A	Brown	MINI	
10A	Red	MINI	
15A	Blue	MINI	
20A	Yellow MINI		
25A	Light color	MINI	
30A	Green	MINI	
20A	Blue	JCASE	
30A	Pink	JCASE	
40A	Green	BF1	
80A	White	BF1	
100A	Black MIDI		

### Check and replace the fuse.

If an electrical device on the car stops working, first check whether it is caused by fuse damage. It can be determined which fuse or fuses control this component according to the diagram on page 301, 303 or 305 or the location diagram on electrical box cover. Before you can't determine whether the damaged fuse is the cause of the fault, you can replace all the damaged fuses and check whether the electrical equipment can work normally. If there is still a fault, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV.



Figure-Fuse puller in front engine room electrical box

Use the fuse puller in the electrical box to pull out the blown fuse.

#### i Hint

The fuse puller is located in the electrical box and its color is red.

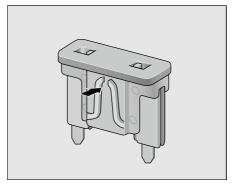


Figure-Blown fuse

Seek the blown fuse in the electrical box. If the fuse has blown (the fuse shown in the figure has been disconnected), replace it with a spare fuse with the same or lower ampere value. If there is no spare fuse for replacement, making the vehicle unable to move, the fuse with the same or lower ampere value can be removed from other circuits for replacement. However, it must be confirmed that you do not use this circuit temporarily, such as cigarette lighter or radio. Make sure that removing the fuse will not affect the vehicle driving.

If the replaced fuse with the same ampere value is blown again in a short time, it indicates that there may be serious electrical failure in the vehicle. Never use the system with possible failure. At this time, leave the blown fuse on the circuit and contact the authorized dealer of BJEV immediately.

#### Note

If you replace a blown fuse with a spare fuse with a lower ampere value, it may blow again. If troubleshooting, it should also be replaced with fuses with correct rating as soon as possible.

#### Dashboard fuse box

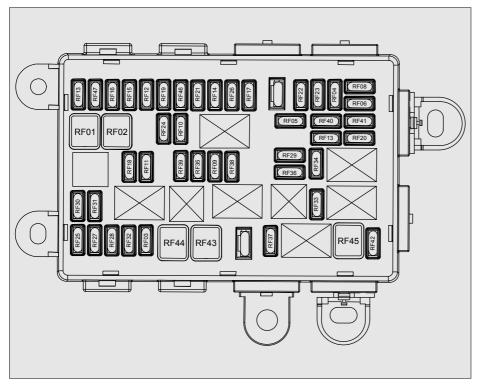


Figure-Fuse and relay arrangement in instrument panel electrical box

### Specifications and names of components in instrument panel electrical box

No.	Specifi- cations	Name
RF01	30A	Left front/rear right window power +
RF02	30A	Front right/Left rear window power
RF03	20A	BCM door lock power
RF04	5A	Hybrid fan power supply
RF05	15A	POWER-C-LIGHTING2
RF06	30A	
RF07	25A	
RF08	5A	
RF09	10A	
RF10	7.5A	Pedestrian warning switch
RF11	10A	
RF12	7.5A	BMS IG
RF13	5A	Electronic knob shift
RF14	5A	TPMS/Gateway/BCM/In- strument/P gear IG Power
RF15	5A	Front-view camera⊙
RF16	7.5A	Brake switch
RF17	15A	
RF18	7.5A	Pedestrian warning switch #
RF19	7.5A	Rain sensor#
RF20	7.5A	Rain sensor <sup>&amp;</sup>

No.	Specifi- cations	Name	
RF21	10A		
RF22	5A	BCM ACC power	
RF23	15A	Cigar lighter	
RF24	10A	Anti-theft alarm ACC*	
RF25	15A	Constant electricity of Central Control System	
RF26	20A	Sunroof motor	
RF27	15A	BCM horn power	
RF28	7.5A	Trunk light	
RF29	7.5A	ESCL IMMO	
RF30	7.5A	PEPS KL30-1	
RF31	10A	PEPS KL30-2	
RF32	10A	KL30	
RF33	5A		
RF34	30A		
RF35	7.5A		
RF36	7.5A		
RF37	10A		
RF38	10A		
RF39	15A		
RF40	10A	Driver seat heating	
RF41	10A	Constant electricity of a nti- theft alarm	
RF41	10A	Inner ambient light controller <sup>⊙</sup>	
RF42	5A	Air conditioning feedback	
RF43	20A	Electric adjustment of driver	

N	0.	Specifi- cations	
RF	44	30A	EPB <sup>©</sup>
RF	45	20A	P-gear controllers
RF	46	10A	T-BOX
RF	47	10A	Airbag SRS IG1

#### Mark\*:

- " ① " indicates the R600 model with multi-link ambient light configuration
- "\*" indicates R400 and R500 car-hailing models
- "&" indicates torsion beam model
- "#" indicates multi-link models
- " © " indicates the model with EPB controller configuration

#### **∕!** WARNING

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

#### Note

Some fuses must be replaced by the authorized dealer of BJEV and contact it for details.

#### i Hint

- The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.
- An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

### Front engine room electronic box 1 (UEC1)

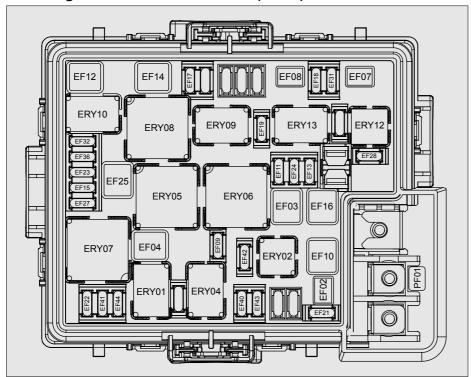


Figure-Fuse and Relay Arrangement of Front Engine Room Electrical Box 1

### Specifications and names of components in front engine room electrical box

Com Glocarioar Box				
No.	Specifi- cations	Name		
ERY01		Reserve relay		
ERY02		Daytime running light relay		
ERY04		Water pump relay		
ERY05		Low speed fan relay		
ERY06		High speed fan relay		
ERY07		Blower relay		
ERY08		Front wiper relay		
ERY09		2 root of front wiper relay		
ERY10		Low-beam headlight relay		
ERY12		Wake up CMU/OBC relay		
ERY13		ACC relay		
PF01	175A	PEU		
EF02	20A	Water pump		
EF03	20A	Low-speed fan <sup>&amp;</sup>		
EF03	40A	Low-speed fan#		
EF04	40A	Air blower		
EF07	20A	High-speed fan <sup>&amp;</sup>		
EF07	30A	High-speed fan#		
EF08	40A	ABS motor <sup>©</sup>		
EF08	40A	ESC Motor <sup>⊙</sup>		
EF09	5A	Atmosphere light		
EF10	30A	EPB <sup>©</sup>		

No.	Specifi- cations	Name	
EF10	40A	ESC valve <sup>⊙</sup>	
EF11	15A	Horn	
EF12	40A	Constant electricity 2 of ignition switch	
EF13	10A	IG2&	
EF13	-	Reserved	
EF14	50A	Constant electricity 1 of Ignition switch	
EF15	10A	UEC2	
EF16	60A	EPS	
EF17	10A	Slow charge	
EF18	5A	Air blower	
EF19	20A	Front Wiper	
EF21	20A	A/C compressor	
EF22	10A	Wake up CMU/OBC	
EF23	10A	BMS	
EF24	25A	ABS valve <sup>©</sup>	
EF24	-	Reserve <sup>⊙</sup>	
EF25	30A	Vacuum pump	
EF27	10A	High beam light	
EF28	10A	PEU	
EF31	10A	Brake switch	
EF32	10A	Left low-beam light	
EF36	10A	Right low-beam light	
EF40	20A	IG1&	
EF40	25A	IG1#	
EF41	5A	Quick charge wake-up	

No.	Specifi- cations	Name
EF42	7.5A	Daytime running light
EF43	20A	ACC
EF44	30A	Rear windshield heating

#### Mark\*:

- "&" indicates torsion beam model "#" indicates multi-link models
- " © " Indicates ABS configuration model
- ⊙ " indicates ESP configuration model



Do not use a screwdriver or other metal object to remove the fuse as this will short the circuit and damage the system.

### i Hint

Turn off the Start/Stop button and all other switches before replacing the fuse.

### Front engine room electronic box 2 (UEC2)

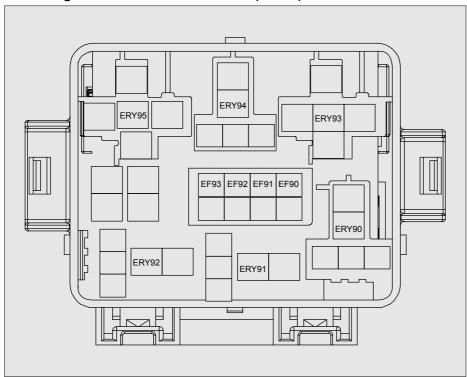


Figure-Fuse and Relay Arrangement of Front Engine Room Electrical Box 2

### Specifications and names of components in front engine room electrical box

Specifi- cations	Name	
-	Rear fog light relay	
-	Rear defroster relay	
-	Reversing light relay	
-	IG1 relay	
-	IG2 relay <sup>&amp;</sup>	
-	Reserve <sup>#</sup>	
-	Quick charge wake-up relay	
5A	Quick charge relay	
10A	Reverse light	
10A	PTC EAS	
5A	Rear view mirror heating	
ı	Reserve	
-	Reserve	
	5A 10A 10A	

#### Mark\*:

"&" indicates torsion beam model

"#" indicates multi-link models

### Replace the bulbs

Before you drive the vehicle, check whether all external lights are operating properly.

Note: Only use bulbs of the same model and specification for replacement.

Before replacing the bulb, turn off the lighting switch to avoid any possible short circuit.

Usually, it is impossible to replace bulbs without removing other vehicle parts first, especially for bulbs that can only be operated from the front engine room. Therefore, this job requires professional skills. At the same time, we suggest driving to the authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV to replace bulbs.

#### **∴** WARNING

- Pay special attention when working in the front engine room!
- There is a certain pressure in the bulb, which may explode when replaced to avoid injury.

### Halogen / xenon bulb

Halogen / xenon bulbs are used for low beam and high beam headlights. If the glass of this type of bulb is scratched during use, it may break or be polluted by oil or drainage. Be careful not to touch the glass with your hands; Please use a soft cloth to operate the bulb.

If necessary, use methylated alcohol to remove finger marks left on the glass.

### Vehicle lifting

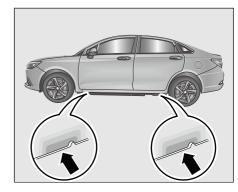


Figure-Lifting vehicle positions

When lifting the whole vehicle, the lifting bracket should be located at the opening of the front and rear ends of the side beam trim plate, and lift the side wall sheet metal of the vehicle body. The lifting bracket should not contact the side beam trim plate body, otherwise, it will cause damage to the side beam trim plate.

### **Emergency traction**

Electric vehicles cannot be started by traction.

The front part of the vehicle is provided with a threaded hole for installing a traction ring. When your vehicle breaks down or has an accident, if necessary, you can use the threaded hole at the front as the traction point for pulling your vehicle.

#### Note

- Never use twisted rope to tow the vehicle. Any untwisting force may loosen the front towing ring.
- Towing rings should not be used to tow other vehicles, and should never be used to tow trailers.

The best way to tow is to use a dedicated tractor or suspension towing (rear wheel lift). If only four wheels can land at the same time when the vehicle is towed, attention must be paid to:

The "Start/Stop button" must be pressed to put the vehicle in ACC state, otherwise, the steering wheel will not turn.

- The "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode, turns on the hazard warning light, and can use the brake light, wiper and turn signal.
- The complete vehicle gear is in "N" gear, and the electronic parking is released.
- If the complete vehicle is not powered on, the electric vacuum power assistance and electric power steering will not work, so it is necessary to step on the brake pedal and turn the steering wheel with greater force, and the braking distance will become longer
- The speed of tractor shall not exceed 40km/h.

#### Vehicle front traction



Figure-Vehicle Front Traction Ring Installation Position

The front traction ring of the vehicle is installed below the right front side wall of the vehicle.

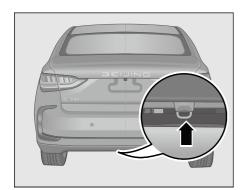


Figure-Vehicle Front Traction Ring Installation Position

Detailed steps are shown below:

- Take out the traction ring from the on-vehicle tool box at the lower part of the trunk carpet;
- Carefully remove the plastic cover from the front bumper housing and manually screw the traction ring clockwise into the threaded hole.

#### **↑** WARNING

- Unless you have the experience, do not tow other vehicle to avoid accidents.
- The traction ring must be firmly screwed into the threaded hole, otherwise, the traction ring may slip from the threaded hole during traction.

After the traction is completed, remove the traction ring in the reverse order as mentioned above, and buckle the protective cover.

#### Vehicle rear traction

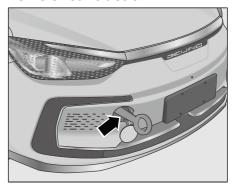


Figure-Vehicle Rear Traction Ring Installation Position

The rear traction ring is arranged on the welded plate at the rear of the vehicle.

#### Note

- The driver in the towed vehicle must turn on the hazard warning lights and follow the local laws and regulations.
- During traction, the gear of the complete vehicle should be switched to "N" gear.
- Be sure to strain the tow rope.
- Make sure the towing ring is in the vehicle.
- Remember! The brake booster and power steering mechanism of the towed vehicle do not work when towing! Therefore, braking should be done in advance, but the brake pedal should be lightly stepped on.

### Vehicle towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC BJFV or a professional trailer company for handling. And tell them how to tow the vehicle.

Using proper equipment in towing can prevent damage to the vehicle. The professional personnel of trailer companies are familiar with national/provincial and local trailer laws, and can seek their help!

#### Note

Don't use lifting truck to tow the car from the front or rear of the car; otherwise, it may cause damage to the body.

#### Rigid

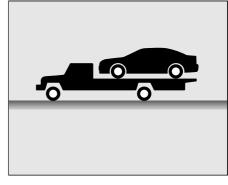


Figure-Loading vehicles with flatbed rescue vehicles

The best towing way is to load and fix the failed vehicle on the rescue vehicle. When the vehicle needs to be towed in an accident, this method should be preferred.

#### Note

After loading the failed vehicle onto the rescue vehicle, turn on the electronic parking brake switch of the failed vehicle and fix the four wheels to prevent the failed vehicle from moving during emergency braking of the rescue vehicle.

#### Drag from the front

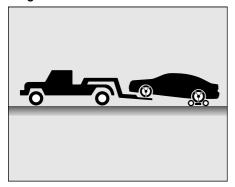


Figure-Drag the vehicle from the front

#### Note

When lifting the wheel, pay attention to make sure that the other end opposite to lifting end (rear of the car) has proper leaving-off ground clearance. Otherwise, the housing of rear bumper or body bottom plate of the car to be towed may be damaged during towing.

#### Drag from the rear

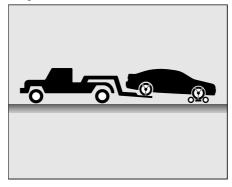


Figure-Drag the vehicle from the rear

#### Note

When lifting the wheel, pay attention to make sure that the other end opposite to lifting end (front of the car) has proper leaving-off ground clearance. Otherwise, the housing of front bumper or body bottom plate of the car to be towed may be damaged during towing.

#### Lifting truck is strictly forbidden to use.

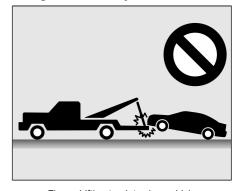


Figure-Lifting truck towing vehicle

#### Note

Don't use lifting truck to tow the car from the front or rear of the car; otherwise, it may cause damage to the body.

### 6. Technical Data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)	312
Drive motor and reducer	313
Vehicle nameplate	314
Vehicle parameters	315

#### 6

### **Vehicle identification number (VIN)**

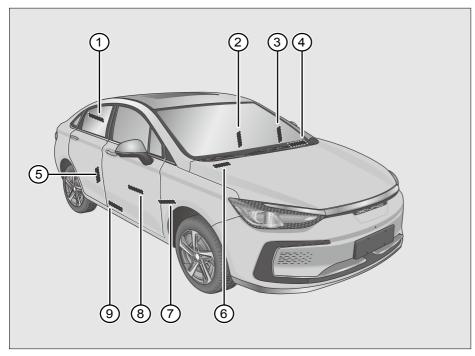


Figure - Vehicle Identification Code Layout

There are 9 vehicle identification codes (VIN) that can be found, and their positions are shown in the figure:

- Rear trunk lid VIN
- 2. Lower VIN of left B-pillar inner plate
- 3. Left front door inner panel VIN
- 4. Front windshield VIN
- 5. Rear right door inner panel VIN
- 6. Inside of front compartment lid
- Front crossbeam VIN of front passenger
- 8. Rear floor front extension panel
- 9. VIN in Vehicle Nameplate

#### Hint

The vehicle identification number (VIN) of electronic control unit ECU can also be read by BAIC new energy diagnostic instrument.

Note: ECU refers to drive motor controller, etc.

### **Drive motor and reducer**

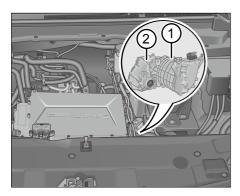


Figure - Installation position of drive motor and reducer

As shown in the figure, the installation position of drive motor and reducer:

- Drive motor
- Reducer

The corresponding models can be seen on the drive motor and reducer.

#### Model and number identification of driving motor

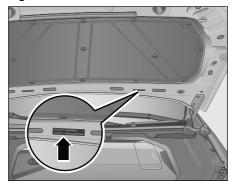


Figure-Drive motor model and number identification position

The model and number identification of the driving motor is located at the left position at the rear of the front nacelle cover, which can only be seen by opening the front nacelle cover.

#### 6

### Vehicle nameplate



Figure-Location of vehicle nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located at the lower part of the right B-pillar, from which the following information can be read:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- b) Brand, complete vehicle model;
- Model of driving motor and number of passengers;
- Peak power of driving motor and curb weight of complete vehicle;
- Rated voltage and maximum allowable gross mass of power battery system;
- Rated capacity of the power battery system, year of manufacture.

#### Microwave window

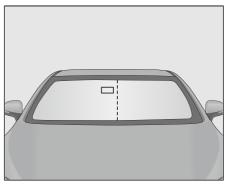


Figure-Microwave window

The microwave window is used to install the vehicle electronic identification. The installation position is not allowed to have film, heating wire and other, so as to ensure the effective reading of data.

### **Vehicle parameters**

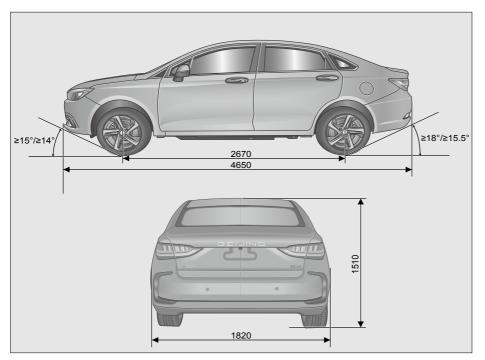


Figure - Vehicle Size Parameters

#### Size Unit: mm

\*The exterior rear-view mirror of the vehicle is a component that is not included in the overall dimensions of the vehicle

### Overall dimensions / mass parameters of complete vehicle

Model	BJ7000C5D4-BEV	BJ7000C5D7-BEV	BJ7000C5DA-BEV	BJ7000C5DD-BEV
Total length (mm)	4650	4650	4650	4650
Total width (mm)	1820	1820	1820	1820
Total height (no-load) (mm)	1510	1510	1520	1520
Wheelbase (mm)	2670	2670	2670	2670
Front suspension (no-load) (mm)	940	940	940	940
Rear suspension (no-load) (mm)	1040	1040	1040	1040
Front wheelbase (mm)	1555	1555	1555	1555
Rear wheelbase (mm)	1560	1560	1560	1560
Curb weight (mm)	1680	1640	1600	1580
Curb front axle load / rear axle load (kg)	940/740	900/740	915/685	860/720
Full load quality	2055	2015	1975	1955
Full load front axle load / rear axle load (kg)	1050/1005	1020/995	1040/935	987/968
Number of passengers (person)	5	5	5	5

### **Economic performance**

Model	BJ7000C5D4-BEV	BJ7000C5D7-BEV	BJ7000C5DA-BEV BJ7000C5DD-BEV
Power consumption under 60km / h constant speed condition (kWh / 100km)	10.6	10.7	11.0
Driving range (km) under 60km/h constant speed condition	635	525	510
Power consumption per 100 km under NEDC condition (kWh/100km)	≤13.42	≤13.3	13.7
NEDC Driving Range (km)	501	416	401
Braking Energy Recovery Rate under NEDC Operating Condition (%)	≥25	≥25	≥25

### Suspension

Front Suspension	MacPherson type independent suspension
Rear suspension	Multi-link independent suspension

### **Vehicle trafficability**

Longitudinal passage angle (preparation) (°)	≥12.5
Approach angle (curb/full load) (°)	≥15/≥14
Departure angle (curb / full load) (°)	≥18/≥15.5
Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	≤11.2
Wading depth (mm)	300
Minimum ground clearance (curb / full load) (mm)	≥140/≥120

### NVH

Exterior noise during accelerated driving (dB (A))	≤70
Driving at constant speed (60km/h) Internal noise (dB (A)	≤62
Driving at constant speed (80km/h) Internal noise (dB (A)	≤65

### **Brake System**

11.2
2
321.5
28
26
0.05
0.05
9.3
2
310
12
10
0.05
0.05

<sup>\*</sup>The reasonable range of free travel of brake pedal is about 10  $\sim$ 15mm, which cannot be adjusted after installation.

### **Braking performance**

Braking distance (initial speed 100km / h / no-load) (m)	≤44
Braking distance (initial speed 100km / h / full load) (m)	≤45
Braking distance (initial speed 50km / h / no-load) (m)	≤15
Braking distance (initial speed 50km / h / full load) (m)	≤16
Braking deceleration (m/s²)	≥8.5
Pedal force (N)	≤500
Electronic parking slope (%)	20

### Wheels

Project	Front / rear wheels	
Tire pressure (no-load)	250kPa	
Tire pressure (full load)	270kPa	
Wheel rim specification	7J × 17 inch aluminum wheel	
Tire specification	standard configuration :215 / 50 R17	

### **Power battery**

Model	BJ7000 C5D4- BEV	BJ7000 C5D7- BEV	BJ7000C5DA-BEV BJ7000C5DD-BEV
Rated capacity of power battery (Ah)	150	153	150
Nominal voltage of power battery (V)	401.5	332.1	331.2
Nominal capacity of battery system (kWh)	60.2	50.81	49.6
Specific energy density of battery (Wh/kg)	> 140	≥160	> 160

### Wheel dynamic unbalance mass

Type of wheel	Dynamic unbalance mass (g)	
Front wheels	Single side ≤8	
Rear wheels	Single side ≤8	

### Oil parameters

Model	BJ7000C5D4- BEV	BJ7000C5D7- BEV BJ7000C5DA- BEV	BJ7000C5DD- BEV
Reducer oil	1.8L		0.8L
Windshield deter- gent	1.8L		
A/C refrigerant	500g±10g		
Brake fluid	0.9L		
	Motor auxiliary water tank 3.8L±0.1L		Motor cooling auxiliary water tank 3.5L± 0.1L
Coolant	Battery auxiliary radiator 4.8L±0.1L  Battery auxiliary radiator 4.8L±0.1L		radiator
	Warm air auxiliary water tank 2.8L±0.1L		

### **Battery**

Battery type	Lead acid battery		
Battery rating (Ah)	45		
Voltage and Electrodes	12V, negative (-) ground		

### **Drive motor parameters**

Model	BJ7000C5D4-BEV BJ7000C5D7-BEV BJ7000C5DA-BEV	BJ7000C5DD-BEV
Motor type:	Permanent-Mag- net Synchro- nous Motor	Permanent-Mag- net Synchro- nous Motor
Motor cooling type	Water-cooled	Water-cooled
Motor rated power (kW)	80	41
Rated torque of motor (N.m)	150	82
Rated speed of motor (rpm)	5100	4775
Peak power of motor (kW)	160	120
Peak torque of motor (Nm)	300	240
Peak torque of motor (Nm)	11000	13500
Insulation grade	Н	Н
Electric motor weight (kg)	50	42

### **Positioning parameters**

Front Suspension	Toe-in (single side)	0.2°±3'	Wheel differential<3'
	Camber angle of wheel	-0.2°±30'	Wheel differential<45'
	Caster angle	3.38°±30'	Wheel differential<30'
	Kingpin inclination angle	13.14°±30'	-
Rear suspension	Toe-in (single side)	0.12°±3'	Wheel differential<5'
	Camber angle of wheel	-0.7°±30'	Wheel differential<30'

### **Dynamic performance**

Model			BJ7000 C5D7-BEV	BJ7000 C5DA-BEV	BJ7000 C5DD-BEV
Acceleration time of normal temperature S gear (20 °C ~ 30 °C)	0-50Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤4.1	≤3.9	≤4.0	≤5.0
	50-80Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤2.6	≤3.0	≤3.0	≤4.0
	0-100Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤8.8	≤8.8	≤8.8	≤10
	60-120Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤7.5	≤7.5	≤7.5	≤8.0
Acceleration time of normal temperature S gear (20 °C ~ 30 °C)	0-50Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤4.8	≤4.1	≤4.6	≤5.0
	50-80Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤3.0	≤3.0	≤3.0	≤4.0
	0-100Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤10.2	≤10.5	≤10	≤11.0
	60-120Km/h acceleration time (s)	≤8.6	≤9.0	≤9.0	≤10.0
Maximum speed (km/h)		155	155	155	150
Maximum gradeability (%)		≥30	≥30	≥30	≥30
Full load ramp start capability (%)		≥25	≥25	≥25	≥25

### **Bulb specifications**

Name	Model	Specifications	
Low-beam light	H7	55W/12V	
High beam light	H1	55W/12V	
Front turn signal light	P21W	21W/12V	
Rear turn signal light	PY21W	21W/12V	
Side turn signal light	Ceiling lamp	0.3W	
Rear fog light	Ceiling lamp	5W	
Front position lamp	Ceiling lamp	21W	
Rear position light	LED*, P5/21W*	2.2W/12V*, 5W/12V*	
Daytime running light	Ceiling lamp	10W	
Reverse light	W16W	16W/12V	
License light	W5W	5W/12V	
High-mounted brake lamp	Ceiling lamp	1.2W	
Brake light	P5/21W*, P21W*	21W/12V	
Front interior ceiling light	C10W	10W/12V	
Trunk light	W5W	5W/12V	
Atmosphere light	Ceiling lamp	0.2W	

### 7. Breakdown Call

Breakdown Call	32	2	5
----------------	----	---	---

### **Breakdown Call**

BJEV provides rescue services 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. When your vehicle breaks down and cannot be handled by yourself, you can get help through the following methods:

- Call the local authorized dealer of BAIC BJEV:
- Call BAIC BJEV National Rescue Service Hotline: 400-810-8100, and we will arrange rescue teams to implement rescue services in the shortest time. For the breakdown that occurred during the warranty period, the vehicle rescue service within the scope of warranty claim is a free rescue (including out-of-charge fare and towing fee), except for the following circumstances:
- 1. Rescue activities without the prior consent of BAIC BJEV and its service providers;
- 2. Vehicles already in the workshop;
- 3. As a result of accident, robbery or man-made damage, and any damage caused by them;
- 4. Loss caused by intentional or negligent behavior;
- 5. Damage caused by participating in racing cars or other activities involving driving at extreme speed;
- 6. Damage caused by installing parts not approved by BAIC BJEV or modifying vehicles without permission of BAIC BJEV. For the vehicle rescue service that fails during the warranty period but is not within the scope of the claim, the customer shall pay for it at his own expense, including the fare, towing fee, working hours fee, and material fee.